JENNER-GRANT

A FIRST YEAR OF LATIN

PART TWO

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

UNDER THE GENERAL EDITORSHIP OF
HENRY RUSHTON FAIRCLOUGH
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

A FIRST YEAR OF LATIN

Lesson XLIX, Paragraph 304 — *After Karl von Piloty*

THE GERMAN PRINCESS THUSNELDA GRACES THE TRIUMPH OF GERMANICUS—TIBERIUS REVIEWING THE TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION

A FIRST YEAR OF LATIN

BY

WILLIAM A. JENNER

CHAIRMAN OF DEPARTMENT OF FOREIGN LANGUAGES

AND

ALICE C. GRANT

ASSISTANT TEACHER OF LATIN

BOTH OF NEW UTRECHT HIGH SCHOOL, BOROUGH OF BROOKLYN
NEW YORK CITY

PART TWO

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

CHICAGO NEW YORK BOSTON

COPYRIGHT, 1923
BY BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

PREFACE

THIS book is a practical attempt to vitalize Latin and to render the first year work of value in itself — a radical departure from timeworn methods long discarded in the teaching of the vernacular and modern languages. The authors have found by actually and successfully teaching this book in mimeograph sheets that not only reading, but also forms, vocabulary, and constructions can be very attractively and most efficiently taught through connected Latin stories. Not only is the normal mortality greatly decreased, but a high degree of interest is maintained even among those whose weakness in forms forbids their promotion.

Part Two is a realization of the ideal recently set forth by Professor Gonzales Lodge of Columbia University— "a study of Latin life and civilization around a thread of Latin language." The Latin-English reading now consists of a continued story, relating the experiences of a little Greek boy who is sold into slavery in Rome. The development of this story affords rare opportunities of presenting in an attractive form descriptions and anecdotes illustrative of Roman life, both public and private. Every chapter is carefully planned to teach the forms, vocabulary, and constructions of its particular lesson.

The illustrations are intimately connected with the subject matter presented in the reading—*illustrations that illustrate.*

Copious exercises afford ample practice in forms, derivation, and writing Latin based on the stories presented.

The exercises are so divided into sections A, B, C, etc., as to leave to the teacher's discretion what may properly be assigned for the work of any one school day. Each lesson is expected to occupy from two to three days according to the ability of the class. The exercises are calculated to include adequate reviews of forms and vocabulary. The authors found when teaching the book in mimeograph form that the progress of the classes was sound and satisfactory without interrupting or reorganizing the pursuit of the exercises as planned.

The vocabulary is limited for the most part to those words recommended in approved lists and adopted by leading first-year books. These words taught in a medium of live interest find a ready and natural lodgment in the memory. The authors have adopted the scheme of special vocabularies, convenient but not too convenient for reference. In these special vocabularies, the words marked with an asterisk are those prescribed in selected word lists. All such words have been used in the exercises for translation and drill. A few words, whose meanings are obvious or are explained in the text, are omitted from the vocabularies.

It has not been the intention of the authors to create a book for any particular state. Therefore, to the fifty lessons designed to meet New York requirements are added in Part Two ten additional lessons, LI-LX, teaching all that is commonly taught in first-year Latin books of established reputation. It is expected that the teachers in New York also will approve of this addition as it is a matter of general agreement that the State Syllabus leaves far too much form work for the third half-year.

CONTENTS

PART TWO

XXXI. Third Conjugation Verbs in **io**—Familiar Quotations—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Introductio** 179

XXXII. Third Declension **I**-stems: Nouns and Adjectives—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Primum—Gaudia Pueritiae** . . 184

XXXIII. Third Declension Adjectives Completed—Declension and Comparison—Formation of Adverbs—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Secundum—Prodicus in Schola** . 189

XXXIV. Comparison of Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs—Dative with Adjectives—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Tertium—Prodicus Poetas Amabat** 194

XXXV. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns—Possessive Adjectives—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Quartum—Colloquium inter Matrem et Prodicum** 199

XXXVI. Fourth Declension of Nouns—Subjective and Objective Genitive—The Intensive Pronoun **ipse**—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Quintum—Magnam Calamitatem Prodicus Accipit** 205

XXXVII. The Fifth Declension—Genitive and Ablative of Description—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Sextum—Dolores Prodici in Navi** 210

XXXVIII. The Present Subjunctive and Its Use in Pur-

pose Clauses—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Septimum—Servitus Romana** . . 215

XXXIX. Imperfect Subjunctive of All Conjugations—Purpose Clauses Concluded—Genitive with Adjectives—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Octavum—Prodicus in Servitutem Venditur** 220

XL. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive—Indirect Questions—Sequence of Tenses—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Nonum—Adventus Servorum ad Urbem Romam** . 226

XLI. Dative with Intransitive and Compound Verbs—Declension of Certain Irregular Nouns—The Locative Case—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Decimum—Fortuna Mala et Bona** 232

XLII. Place Relations—Ablative of Separation—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Undecimum—Villa Romana Pansae Patris** . . 238

XLIII. Time and Space Relations—Formation of Nouns from Verbs—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Duodecimum—Adventus Domum Urbanam** 244

XLIV. Formation, Declension, and Uses of Participles—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Tertium Decimum—Domus Romana: Pars Prima** 249

XLV. The Ablative Absolute—Defective Verbs—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Quartum Decimum—Domus Romana: Pars Secunda** 256

XLVI. Ablatives of Means, Cause, and Manner—Formation of Nouns from Adjectives—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Quintum Decimum—Vita Urbana** 262

XLVII. Ablatives of Degree of Difference and Specification—Numerals Continued—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Sextum Decimum—Pompa Circensis** 268

XLVIII. Infinitives—Formation and Use as Subject Complement—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Septimum Decimum—Colloquium inter Parvum Dominum et Prodicum** . 274

XLIX. Infinitives in Indirect Discourse—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Duodevicensimum—Triumphus** 281

L. Semideponents and General Review—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Undevicensimum—Civis Romanus Sum** 286

LI. Deponent Verbs—Ablative with Certain Deponents—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum—Forum Romanum** . . . 291

LII. The Irregular Verbs **esse** and **posse** Reviewed and Completed—Active Periphrastic Conjugation—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum Primum—Rostra Romana** 297

LIII. The Irregular Verbs **volo, nolo, malo—Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum Secundum—Apud Tabernas Librorum** . 302

LIV. **Quod** Causal Clauses—The Irregular Verb **fio—Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum Tertium–Thermae Romanae**. 308

LV. The Irregular Verb **eo**—Genitive of the Whole—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum Quartum—Adulescentes Theatrum Adeunt** 313

LVI. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation—Dative of Agency—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput**

Vicensimum Quintum—Funus Romanum 318

LVII. Gerunds—Supines—Purpose Expressions—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum Sextum—Saturnalia** 323

LVIII. The Irregular Verb **fero**—Result Clauses—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Vicensimum Septimum—Dies Civis Romani** 328

LIX. Cardinal Numerals Completed—Commands—**Fabula de Puero Graeco: Caput Duodetricensimum—Colloquium inter Lucium et Marcum** 333

LX. General Review of Forms—Review of Statements, Questions, and Commands in Indirect Discourse—Practical Latin . . 338

Special Vocabularies 345

Appendix 363

Vocabulary: Latin-English, English-Latin . i

Index xxxiii

A FIRST YEAR OF LATIN

PART TWO

Facit indignātiō versum — Indignation breeds verse.
— JUVENAL

LESSON XXXI

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN *IO*

198. The Conjugation of *capere*, "to take." The verb **capere**, *to take*, and a few others of the third conjugation end in **iō** in the present indicative active first singular. In the indicative throughout they closely resemble verbs of the fourth conjugation, as may be seen from the following paradigm and synopses:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

PRESENT STEM: **capi- (cape-)** PERFECT STEM: **cēp-**

PART. STEM: **capt-**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	I take, etc.		*I am taken*, etc.	
1.	**capiō**	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
2.	**capis**	**capitis**	**caperis**	**capiminī**
3.	**capit**	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**

Note the absence of the characteristic long **i** of the fourth conjugation, and also the **e** of the second singular passive.

SYNOPSES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres. **capit,** *he takes*	**capitur,** *he is taken*
Imperf. **capiēbat,** *he was taking*	**capiēbātur,** *he was being taken*
Fut. **capiet,** *he will take*	**capiētur,** *he will be taken*
Perf. **cēpit,** *he took*	**captus est,** *he was taken*
Plup. **cēperat,** *he had taken*	**captus erat,** *he had been taken*
Fut. Perf. **cēperit,** *he will have taken*	**captus erit,** *he will have been taken*

199. Other Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation. Memorize the principal parts of the following verbs conjugated like **capere:**

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl*

Note also the following compounds of **capere:**

accipiō (**ac** for **ad**)	**-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus**	*accept, receive*
excipiō		*take, accept*
incipiō		*begin, undertake*
intercipiō		*intercept, cut off*
praecipiō		*order, instruct, advise*
recipiō		*take back, receive*
suscipiō (**sus** for **sub**)		*take up, undertake*

200. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings, synopses as follows:

(1) **facere,** *to make,* 3rd plural, active only.

(2) **excipere,** *to accept,* 2nd singular, passive only.

B. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *the same higher tree.*

(2) *this* (**hic**) *more unjust act.*

(3) *two most sacred duties.*

C. Make a derivation table for **capere,** using Latin compounds given in **199.** Use English derivatives in sentences as previously directed.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The march of the king's soldiers will be intercepted by foreign princes.

2. The wars of other nations have been more frequent than (those) of our country.

3. Shall we begin now to fortify the road which has been built (made)?

4. That poor man was rendered happier than before by the money which he had found.

5. Many towns were captured by our troops by means of siege.

201. Familiar Quotations. Our study of Latin during the past half year enables us to understand the meaning of the following Latin expressions, some of which have appeared in our mottoes at the beginning of lessons:

Ālea iacta est
Aliās[1]
Alibī[2]
Alma[3] Māter
Ante bellum
Annō Dominī (A.D.)
Aqua vītae
Ars longa, vīta brevis
Bella horrida
Carthāgō dēlenda est
Cēdant arma togae
Corpus Christī
Dē novō
Deī grātiā rēx
Deō, amīcīs, patriae
Deum laudāmus
Dux fēmina factī
Exemplī grātiā (e.g.)
Ex officiō
Ex post factō
Ex tempore
Facsimile
Facta nōn verba
Id est (i.e.)
In armīs
In hōc signō vincēs
In memoriam
In pāce
In tōtō
Ipse dīxit
Ipsō factō
Ita lēx scrīpta est
Lēx nōn scrīpta
Lupus in fābulā
Medicīnae doctor (M.D.)
Mēns sāna in corpore sānō
Montānī semper līberī
Nīl[4] hominī certum est
Nūllī secundus
Pater noster
Pater patriae
Per annum
Per capita
Post scrīptum (P.S.)
Prō tempore
Quid nunc
Quod eram es
Quod sum eris
Semper īdem
Suī generis
Tempus fugit
Terra firma
Ūnā vōce
Viā
Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī
Vōx populī, vōx Deī

HELPS

[1] adverb from alius [2] ali-us + ibi [3] *nourishing* [4] *nothing*

202. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

intrōductiō

Multās fābulās dē virīs et fēminīs temporum antīquōrum et praesentium iam nārrāvimus. Longissimam fābulam multīs capitibus[1] nunc nārrāre incipiēmus. Nōmen huius fābulae longae et novae suprā[2] inveniētis. Ut[3] spērāmus et cōnfīdimus, haec fābula dē vītā puerī Graecī ab omnibus[4] discipulīs grātē accipiētur et cum dīligentiā legētur. Ea quae hic puer fēcit nōn erant eadem quae puerī et puellae hodiē faciunt, nam temporibus antīquīs in terrīs remōtīs ab Americā habitābat. Ut eius vītam nārrābimus, multa et nova facta dē Rōmānīs antīquīs cognōscēmus.

HELPS

[1] *chapters* [2] *above* [3] *as* [4] *all*

Aequam mentem servāre — To keep a level head.
— HORACE'S IDEAL

LESSON XXXII

THIRD DECLENSION I-STEMS — NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

203. Third Declension Nouns Completed. Certain nouns of the third declension are said to have i-stems. Such nouns have **ium** instead of **um** in the genitive plural and **īs** as well as **ēs** in the accusative plural. Note also that neuter i-stems show **ī** in the ablative singular and **ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

These peculiarities will be observed in the following paradigms:

	hostis, M., *enemy*	**cohors**, F., *cohort*	**mōns**, M., *mountain*	**mare**, N., *sea*
Stem	**hosti-**	**cohorti-**	**monti-**	**mari-**
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	**hostis**	**cohors**	**mōns**	**mare**
Gen.	**hostis**	**cohortis**	**montis**	**maris**
Dat.	**hostī**	**cohortī**	**montī**	**marī**
Acc.	**hostem**	**cohortem**	**montem**	**mare**
Abl.	**hoste**	**cohorte**	**monte**	**marī**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	**hostēs**	**cohortēs**	**montēs**	**maria**
Gen.	**hostium**	**cohortium**	**montium**	**marium**
Dat.	**hostibus**	**cohortibus**	**montibus**	**maribus**
Acc.	**hostīs (ēs)**	**cohortīs (ēs)**	**montīs (ēs)**	**maria**
Abl.	**hostibus**	**cohortibus**	**montibus**	**maribus**

The stem of these nouns, ending in **i**, is not identical with the base, as is true of the third declension nouns that we have studied in earlier lessons. In the Special Vocabularies these nouns may readily be detected by the appearance of the stem printed after the genitive singular; as **hostis, hostis** (**hosti-**).*

Like the above nouns are declined:

nāvis, nāvis (**nāvi-**), F., *ship* **pōns, pontis** (**ponti-**), M., *bridge*
urbs, urbis (**urbi-**), F., *city*

204. Third Declension Adjectives. As most Latin nouns are found in the third declension, so many more Latin adjectives are declined in this declension than in the first and second declension, which we have already studied. The ablative singular of third declension adjectives ends in **ī**, as does the ablative singular of the noun **mare** in the above paradigm. Otherwise they are declined like **i**-stem nouns of the third declension, as may be seen from the following paradigms:

POMPEIAN MURAL DECORATION
Cupids playing hide and seek.

fortis, -e, *brave, strong* **pār,** gen. **paris,** *equal*

* Such nouns include those ending in **is** or **ēs** if the genitive contains no more syllables than the nominative; nouns in **ns** and **rs** and monosyllables ending in other combinations of a consonant with **s** or **x**; neuters in **e, al,** and **ar.**

	SINGULAR			
	MAS. & FEM.	NEUTER	MAS. & FEM.	NEUTER
Nom.	**fortis**	**forte**	**pār**	**pār**
Gen.	**fortis**	**fortis**	**paris**	**paris**
Dat.	**fortī**	**fortī**	**parī**	**parī**
Acc.	**fortem**	**forte**	**parem**	**pār**
Abl.	**fortī**	**fortī**	**parī**	**parī**
	PLURAL			
Nom.	**fortēs**	**fortia**	**parēs**	**paria**
Gen.	**fortium**	**fortium**	**parium**	**parium**
Dat.	**fortibus**	**fortibus**	**paribus**	**paribus**
Acc.	**fortīs** (ēs)	**fortia**	**parīs** (ēs)	**paria**
Abl.	**fortibus**	**fortibus**	**paribus**	**paribus**

Note that the declension of **pār** differs from that of **fortis** only in having the nominative singular alike in all genders.

Like **fortis** are declined all adjectives ending in **is**; as **crūdēlis**, *cruel;* **gravis**, *heavy, serious;* **levis**, *light;* **facilis**, *easy;* **difficilis**, *difficult;* **mortālis**, *mortal;* **immortālis**, *immortal;* **nōbilis**, *well-known, famous, noble;* **omnis**, *every* (plural *all*).

Like **pār** are declined other third declension adjectives, except those ending in **er**, treated in the next lesson.

205. Compounds of *iacere*. Note the following:

adiciō	**-icere, -iēcī, -iectus**	*throw to, add*
coniciō		*throw together, hurl*
dēiciō		*throw down, disappoint*
ēiciō		*throw out, drive out, eject*
obiciō		*throw against, oppose*
prōiciō		*throw forward, project*
reiciō		*throw back*
trāiciō		*throw across, pierce*

206. Written Work.

A. Make a derivation table for **iacere**, using Latin derivatives given in **205**. Use English derivatives in sentences as previously directed. Note that the initial **i** of **iacere** appears in English as j.

B. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *a mortal man* (**homō**); (2) *a famous city;* (3) *our ship*

C. *Translate into Latin:*

1. All difficult tasks are easy for a brave man.
2. All the soldiers of three cohorts had been sent to the bridge by the leader of the enemy.*
3. Some seas are wider than others.
4. Heavy rocks were being thrown down from the mountains into the sea.
5. We have read about many famous deeds which men have done with the help of the immortal gods.

207. FĀBULA DĒ PUERŌ GRAECŌ

CAPUT PRĪMUM

GAUDIA PUERITIAE (PLEASURES OF CHILDHOOD)

Hic puer dē cuius vītā fābulam legere incipiēmus ā patre et mātre nōmine Graecō Prodicus appellābātur. Cum Prodicus erat decem annōs nātus[1] in casā pulchrā marī fīnitimā cum patre et mātre habitābat. Haec casa nōn aberat longē ā magnō et nōbilī oppidō quod Thēbae[2] appellābātur. Circum casam Prodicī erant multae et

*The singular collective noun *enemy* should be translated into Latin by the plural, *enemies*.

pulchrae arborēs et agrī lātī. Pater Prodicī erat agricola fortis et labōriōsus[3] quī habēbat in mediō° monte agrum parvum quem cum dīligentiā colēbat[4]. Ea quae ex hōc agrō comparābat, ad oppidum Thēbās niger equus carrō levī trahēbat. Quō cum gaudiō parvus puer carrum ascendēbat cum pater ea itinera facilia ad oppidum paene cotīdiē faciēbat! Lōra[5] gravia capiēbat, equum nigrum superbē retinēbat, dum[6] pater ea quae vēndēbat ad oppidānōs portat. Nūllus imperātor cum cohorte cīvium et servōrum fuerat superbior quam parvus puer decem annōs nātus quī cum patre equum nigrum et carrum levem ad oppidum dūxit. Grātus oppidānīs erat fortis puer quem fīlium agricolae bonī esse cognōverant. Itaque multam pecūniam reportāvit atque mātrī dedit.

HELPS

[1] *born ten years*, i.e. *ten years old* [2] *Thebes* [3] *hardworking* [4] *cultivated* [5] *reins* [6] *while*, followed by historical present in Latin

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

POMPEIAN MURAL DECORATION

Little Roman boys had no wings, but played games like these.

Omnia iam metuō; fortior ante fuī — Everything now do I fear; braver was I before.

— Ovid

LESSON XXXIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES COMPLETED — DECLENSION AND COMPARISON — FORMATION OF ADVERBS

208. Third Declension Adjectives of Three Endings. Most adjectives of the third declension have identical forms in the masculine and feminine, as was seen in the last lesson. However, third declension adjectives ending in **er** have a distinct form for the nominative singular feminine. Two in common use are:

M.	F.	N.
ācer	**ācris**	**ācre** (base **ācr-**), *keen, sharp*
celer	**celeris**	**celere** (base **celer-**), *swift*

Only in the nominative singular does their declension differ from that of **fortis,** as may be seen from the following paradigm:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
Gen.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**
Dat.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**
Acc.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**	**ācrīs** (**ēs**)	**ācrīs** (**ēs**)	**ācria**
Abl.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**

209. Comparison of Third Declension Adjectives. (a) Adjectives of the third declension are compared similarly to those of the first and second declension, which we studied in Lesson XXX. Note the similarity of the following comparisons to those previously given:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortis, -e, *brave*	**fortior, fortius**	**fortissimus, -a, -um**
levis, -e, *light*	**levior, levius**	**levissimus, -a, -um**

(b) Third declension adjectives ending in **er** show the same irregularity in the superlative as do those in **er** of the first and second declension such as **miser,** *poor;* **aeger,** *sick.* Note the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
celer, celeris, celere, *swift*	**celerior, celerius**	**celerrimus, -a, -um**
ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen*	**ācrior, ācrius**	**ācerrimus, -a, -um**

(c) With the exception of **crūdēlis** and **nōbilis,** third declension adjectives ending in **lis** show a similar irregularity in the superlative, as:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e, *easy*	**facilior, facilius**	**facillimus, -a, -um**

Similarly are compared **difficilis,** *difficult;* **similis,** *similar, like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike.*

210. Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives. The comparative and superlative forms of the above

adjectives are declined as are those of the first and second declension already studied in **165**, and show the same variety of meanings already noted in **163**. So **celerior** may mean *too swift* or *quite swift* as well as *swifter*, while **celerrimus** may be translated *very swift* as well as *swiftest*.

211. Formation of Adverbs. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension similarly to those already studied in **167**, except the positive, which usually ends in **ter**, as:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortiter, *bravely*	**fortius**, *more bravely*	**fortissimē**, *most bravely*
celeriter, *swiftly*	**celerius**, *more swiftly*	**celerrimē**, *most swiftly*
ācriter, *sharply*	**ācrius**, *more sharply*	**ācerrimē**, *most sharply*
similiter, *similarly*	**similius**, *more similarly*	**simillimē**, *most similarly*

By way of exception the adverb from **facilis** forms its positive in **e** instead of **ter**, giving us

facile, *easily*	**facilius**, *more easily*	**facillimē**, *most easily*

212. Written Work.

A. Compare, with meanings, writing all the nominative singular endings in each degree, the adjectives **gravis**, *heavy;* **levis**, *light;* **nōbilis**, *well-known;* **difficilis**, *difficult;* **similis**, *like.*

B. Form and compare, with meanings, adverbs from the adjectives **gravis,** *heavy;* **levis,** *light;* **nōbilis,** *famous;* **dissimilis,** *different;* **superbus,** *proud.*

C. Decline the following Latin phrases: (1) *a very well-known* (**nōbilis**) *citizen;* (2) *the swiftest ship;* (3) *a very easy journey.*

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The enemy fought bravely, but were easily driven out of the city by the heavy arms of our cohorts.
2. Very heavy ships are able to sail now more swiftly than lighter boats once used to sail.
3. This little boy was swifter and more active than his friends.
4. The farmer's son will very easily sell to the townspeople everything (all things) that he has brought.
5. The brave boy who is eagerly driving (**dūcere**) the swift horses to the city is very proud.

213. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput secundum

Prodicus in Scholā

Prodicus quidem erat puer ācer et in scholā, quae ā Rōmānīs lūdus appellābātur, erat prīmus discipulus. Id est (i.e.) Prodicus erat ācrior et celerior quam reliquī discipulī similis aetātis. Cum erat puer sex annōs nātus, tum Prodicus poterat librōs difficiliōrēs legere atque pulcherrimās litterās scrībere. Reliquī discipulī eum nē numerōrum quidem scientiā superābant. Magister parvī lūdī ubi Prodicus cotīdiē aderat, puerum ācrem et fortem multum

DOCTOR ET DISCIPULI IN GRAECIA

amābat. Cum Prodicus erat duodecim[1] annōs nātus, erat quoque grātus omnibus discipulīs, apud quōs erat dux nōbilis omnium lūdōrum[2] āthlēticōrum. Forte erat eius corpus; eī erat[3] mēns sāna[4] in corpore sānō. Nēmō[5] paris actātis poterat currere celerius quam Prodicus. Nēmō poterat hastam pūram[6] longius iacere. Omnibus lūdīs puerōrum antecēdēbat.

HELPS

[1] **duo + decem** [2] *games* [3] *to him was*, i.e. *he had* [4] *sound* [5] *no one* [6] headless *spear*, used in training and exercise

Vidcō meliōra, dēteriōra sequor — I see what is the better course, I pursue the worse.

— Ovid

LESSON XXXIV

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS — DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

214. Irregular Adjectives Compared. Certain adjectives, whose positive forms have frequently occurred in our study of Latin, are irregularly compared, as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, *good*	**melior, melius,** *better*	**optimus, -a, -um,** *best*
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	**peior, peius,** *worse*	**pessimus, -a, -um,** *worst*
magnus, -a, -um, *large*	**maior, maius,** *larger*	**maximus, -a, -um,** *largest*
multus, -a, -um, *much*	—, **plūs,** *more*	**plūrimus, -a, -um,** *most*
multī, -ae, -a, *many*	**plūrēs, plūra,** *more*	**plūrimī, -ae, -a,** *most*
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	**minor, minus,** *smaller*	**minimus, -a, -um,** *smallest*

215. Irregular Adverbs Compared. The adverbs corresponding to the above adjectives show similar irregularities, as may be seen from the following table:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, *well*	**melius,** *better*	**optimē,** *best*
male, *ill*	**peius,** *worse*	**pessimē,** *worst*
magnopere, *greatly, particularly*	**magis,** *rather, more*	**maximē,** *especially, most*
multum, *much*	**plūs,** *more*	**plūrimum,** *most*
parvum, *little*	**minus,** *less*	**minimē,** *least*

To these may be added:

diū, *long* (time)	**diūtius,** *longer*	**diūtissimē,** *longest*
saepe, *often*	**saepius,** *oftener*	**saepissimē,** *oftenest*

216. The Dative with Adjectives. *Certain adjectives meaning* EQUAL, NEAR, FIT, FRIENDLY, PLEASING, LIKE, *and their opposites, are followed by the dative.* **Grātus, fīnitimus,** and **amīcus** have already occurred with the dative in our reading of Latin; e.g. **grātus agricolae,** *pleasing to the farmer;* **amīcus puerō,** *friendly to the boy;* **marī fīnitima,** *near (to) the sea.* Note these other adjectives followed by the dative:

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*
pār (gen. **paris**), *equal.*
similis, -e, *like,* and its opposite, **dissimilis, -e,** *unlike.*

217. Compounds of *facere*. Note the following:

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus,		*satisfy*
cōnficiō		*finish, exhaust*
dēficiō		*fail, revolt, rebel*
efficiō (**ef** for **ex**)	**-ficere,**	*bring about, accomplish*
interficiō	**-fēcī,**	*kill*
perficiō	**-fectus,**	*accomplish, complete*
praeficiō		*put in charge of*
reficiō		*repair*

218. Written Work.

A. Make a derivation table for **facere,** using the Latin compounds given above, and as many additional prefixes as possible in the formation of English words. For example, not only prepositions, but two of the Latin adverbs in 215 are combined with **facere** in certain English words. Use English derivatives in sentences as previously directed.

B. Write, with meanings, synopses of

(1) **interficere,** *to kill,* 3rd plural passive.

(2) **antecēdere,** *to excel,* 2nd singular active.

C. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *a larger sea;* (2) *most townspeople* (plural only).

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. All tasks suitable for a boy of this age were accomplished better and more quickly by Prodicus than by the others.

2. The knowledge of all times and places is pleasing to the mind of the best pupils.

3. The worst children are very often like their evil companions, and unlike their fathers and mothers.

4. Those who work longest do not always accomplish most.

5. The greatest deeds have been done before this by very small men.

219. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput tertium

Prodicus Poētās Amābat

Poētās Graecōs Prodicus multum amābat, et vōce dulcissimā[1] longās partīs librōrum nōbilium poētae Homērī[2] recitāre poterat. Ōlim Prodicus cum patre ad maximam urbem Thēbās prōcesserat, et eius pater ab equō et carrō discesserat. Puer autem cum equō et carrō remanēbat. Mox pater Prodicī revertit[3]. Circum Prodicum sē[4] premēbat multitūdō cīvium Thēbārum, quī carrum circumvēnerant. Permōtus erat pater, quī multi-

DANTE HOMER VIRGIL

tūdinem pedestrem circum puerum vidēbat. Dē eius salūte dēspērābat, sed sine causā, nam fīlius erat incolumis. Omnēs cīvēs rīdēbant et puerō magnopere plaudēbant[5], quī vōce dulcissimā[1] et clārissimā partem rīdi-

culam poētae Graecī nōbilis bene recitābat. Cum cīvibus Thēbārum diūtissimē stābat pater, quem Prodicus nōn vidēbat. Tālem fīlium maximō gaudiō diū audiēbat. Tandem ūnus ē meliōribus cīvibus, prīnceps Thēbānus[6], pecūniae mīnimum praemium Prodicō dare maximē cupīvit. Hanc autem pecūniam Prodicus accipere dubitāvit; sed omnia quae in carrō erant cīvēs maiōre pretiō coēmērunt. Itaque Prodicus et pater plūrimam pecūniam accēpērunt atque ad minimam casam reportāvērunt.

HELPS

[1] **dulcis,** *sweet* [2] *Homer* [3] *returned* [4] **sē premere,** *to press themselves,* i.e. *to crowd* [5] *were applauding,* with dative [6] *of Thebes, Theban*

220. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters* 1–3 *of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō.*

1. Quā in terrā et prope quam urbem habitābat parvus Prodicus?
2. Quid portābat eius pater ad magnam urbem?
3. Quae poterat Prodicus in scholā facere?
4. Cūr ōlim permōtus est pater Prodicī?
5. Quid fēcērunt cīvēs Thēbārum, quod Prodicus praemium accipere dubitāvit?

Mēns sibi cōnscia rēctī — A mind conscious to itself of right (i.e. a clear conscience).

LESSON XXXV

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS — POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

221. Declension of Pronouns. We have already studied the declension of the demonstrative pronouns is in 132, and hic, ille, and iste in 150 and 151, as well as the declension of the relative and interrogative pronouns in 102 and 117 *. The student should now review these carefully before memorizing the following paradigms of the personal and the reflexive pronouns:

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
Nom.	ego, *I*	nōs, *we*	tū, *you*	vōs, *you*
Gen.	meī	nostrum (ī)	tuī	vestrum (ī)
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	meī, *of myself*	nostrī, *of ourselves*	tuī *of yourself*	vestrī *of yourselves*	suī *of himself, herself, itself*	suī *of themselves*
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

*These paradigms may also be found in the Appendix.

222. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns are used only for the sake of clearness, emphasis, or contrast, as:

I am larger than you.
Ego sum maior quam tū.
We do this, you do not.
Nōs id facimus, vōs nōn.

223. Use of Reflexive Pronouns. Reflexive Pronouns are so called because they reflect or refer back to the subject, as:

1.	**Mē vīdī,** *I saw myself*	**Nōs vīdimus,** *we saw ourselves*
2.	**Tē vīdistī,** *you saw yourself*	**Vōs vīdistis,** *you saw yourselves*
3.	**Sē vīdit,** *he saw himself* **Ea sē vīdit,** *she saw herself*	**Sē vīdērunt,** *they saw themselves*

224. Possessive Adjectives. Possessive adjectives are formed from the genitive of the above pronouns and are declined as regular adjectives of the first and second declension. Note the following, with most of whose forms and meanings we are already familiar:

meus, -a, -um, *my*	**noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our*
tuus, -a, -um, *your* (sing.)	**vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your* (pl.)

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their own*

225. Translation of *suus, -a, -um*. The meaning of the reflexive **suus, -a, -um** depends altogether on the subject

and not at all on the form, which, as an adjective, must agree in G. N. C. with the noun to which it belongs. This may be seen from the following sentences:

(1) **Puella suōs librōs amat.**
The girl loves her own books.

(2) **Puer suam patriam amat.**
The boy loves his own country.

(3) **Mīlitēs sua arma amant.**
The soldiers love their own weapons.

It is very important to remember that **suus, -a, -um,** being reflexive, can *refer only to the subject,* and to a *subject* in the *third person. His, her, its,* or *their,* not referring to the subject, must be expressed by the genitive forms of **is,** or more rarely of **hic** or **ille.**

Observe carefully the following sentences:

(1) *The soldiers heard his voice.*
Mīlitēs eius vōcem audīvērunt.

(2) *The woman heard their voices.*
Fēmina eōrum vōcēs audīvit.

How would the sense be changed, were we to substitute **suam** for **eius** in (1)? **Suās** for **eōrum** in (2)?

226. Caution as to the Use of Possessives. In writing and speaking Latin, the Romans used possessive adjectives only for clearness, emphasis, or contrast; and in translating from Latin into English we may freely supply such words, as may be seen from the following sentences:

(1) **Prodicus mātrem amābat.**
Prodicus loved his mother.

(2) **Pede saxum pellit.**
He strikes the stone with his foot.

227. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings, synopses as follows:

(1) **superāre,** *to surpass,* 2nd singular passive.

(2) **currere,** *to run,* 2nd plural active.

B. Conjugate with meanings the future active of **stāre,** *to stand,* **cupere,** *to desire,* and **pellere,** *to drive.*

C. Decline the following Latin phrases:

(1) *our smallest part,* (2) *your greater reward.* Select the word for *your* which means "belonging to one person."

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Father, will you take (**dūcere**) me with you* to the city today?

2. Yes indeed, my son, I will take you with me*, and very gladly.

3. You can† drive our black horse; I will sell everything that we carry in my wagon.

4. The many men who surrounded you did not see us, because we had hidden ourselves.

5. They will give you a little gift, or they will buy for themselves the rest-of-the-things which we have brought with us.*

6. The citizens of Rome love their city, but the farmer loves his own fields best.

7. You ought to protect yourselves when unfriendly men attack your wagon.

* The preposition **cum,** when used with a personal or reflexive pronoun, is attached to it as an enclitic— as **mēcum,** *with me,* etc.

† What tense?

228. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

CAPUT QUARTUM

Colloquium Inter Mātrem et Prodicum

Prodicus: Quota[1] hōra est, māter mea?

Māter: Est ūna hōra ante lūcem. Super[2] montem lūx sē ostendere incipit.

Prodicus: Dormitne pater meus?

Māter: Prīmum pater tuus proximā[3] nocte fortiter et dīutissimē in hortō labōrāvit. Deinde multa ex hortō portāvit et in carrum posuit. Posteā erat aegerrimus atque ad multam noctem° vigilāvit[4]. Vix[5] ūnam hōram dormit. Quid faciēmus, ego et tū?

Prodicus: Necesse est ad urbem prōcēdere. Ea omnia quae pater tantō labōre comportāvit erunt crās[6] putrida[7].

Māter: Bene sciō. Tū et pater dēbētis surgere atque vōs ad iter parāre. Sed crūdēlissimum erit aegrum patrem tuum vocāre.

Prodicus: Tibi cōnsilium dē meō patre dabō. Eum nōn vocābimus. Ego quiētissimē surgam. Equum nigrum ego et tū sine difficultāte ad iter parābimus. Sōlus ad urbem prōcēdam.

Māter: Poterisne omnia vēndere? Cognōvistīne nōmina omnium rērum quās vēndis?

Prodicus: Omnia vērō cognōvī. Saepissimē mē ad urbem pater dūxit. Omne iter bene sciō. Decimā hōrā iterum aderō et multam pecūniam incolumis ad vōs reportābō. Cum pater surget, tū eī omnia dīcēs; ego longē aberō.

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

MĀTER: Timeō tibi, mī fīlī. Bellum diū geritur. Multī latrōnēs per terram errant[8]. Tē et equum capere poterunt.

PRODICUS: Necesse autem est. Mihi nōn timeō. Ācerrimus et fortissimus sum. Deī mē et nōs ab omnibus malīs dēfendent.

HELPS

[1] *what?* [2] *above* [3] *last* [4] *stayed awake* [5] *scarcely* [6] *tomorrow* [7] *decayed* [8] *are roaming*

CARPENTUM

A carpenter was in early times a wagon-builder.

Sequiturque patrem nōn passibus aequīs — And he follows his father with unequal strides.

— VIRGIL

LESSON XXXVI

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS — SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE — THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE*

229. The Fourth Declension. A few nouns in **us** and **ū** belong to the Fourth Declension. The former are usually masculine; the latter are always neuter. These nouns form the genitive singular in **ūs.** This ending enables us to distinguish them readily from second or third declension nouns whose nominative ends in **us,** like **servus, virtūs,** or **corpus.** The fourth declension is very simple, as will be seen from the following paradigms:

	passus, M., *pace* (five feet, i.e. two steps)		**cornū,** N., *horn, wing** (of an army)	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**passus**	**passūs**	**cornū**	**cornua**
Gen.	**passūs**	**passuum**	**cornūs**	**cornuum**
Dat.	**passuī**	**passibus**	**cornū**	**cornibus**
Acc.	**passum**	**passūs**	**cornū**	**cornua**
Abl.	**passū**	**passibus**	**cornū**	**cornibus**

Like **passus** are declined **adventus** (**ad**+**venīre**), *arrival;* **exitus,** *departure;* **equitātus** (cf. **equitēs**), *cavalry;* **exercitus,** *army;* **senātus,** *senate,* all masculine; and **manus,** *hand,* feminine.

* The Romans thought of an army as a bull with horns, instead of a bird with wings, as we moderns do.

230. Subjective and Objective Genitive. Nouns that are the names of actions or feelings may take a subjective or objective genitive, sometimes both. The subjective genitive names the person or thing that does what is suggested in the name of the action or feeling, as: *the arrival of the army*, **adventus exercitūs.** The objective genitive names the person or thing toward which the action or feeling is directed, as: *the memory of the battle*, **memoria proelī.** Some nouns may take both a subjective and an objective genitive, as: *the senate's praise of the cavalry*, **senātūs laus equitātūs.** Why do we call **senātūs** in the above expression a subjective genitive? Why do we call **equitātūs** an objective genitive? Show how the noun **timor,** *fear*, may take both a subjective and an objective genitive in the same expression.

231. The Intensive Pronoun *ipse*. We have seen that the compound personal pronoun *himself, herself*, etc., when used as a reflexive is translated into Latin by the pronoun **suī.** Study the following sentences, in which this pronoun is not reflexive, but is used for emphasis in apposition with a noun or pronoun expressed or understood; the form of **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** must be in G. N. C. agreement.

(1) *He said it himself.*
Ipse dīxit.

(2) *They saw their mother herself.*
Mātrem ipsam vīdērunt.

(3) *They themselves will come.*
Ipsī venient.

The declension of **ipse** is the same as that of **ille** (151)*, except that the nominative and accusative singular neuter show the ending **um** instead of **ud.**

*Also in Appendix.

232. Written Work.

A. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) In the singular: *the proud senate itself, a better army.*

(2) In the plural: *my hand, two wings themselves.*

B. Conjugate, with meanings, the perfect active of **surgere,** *to rise;* the pluperfect active of **stāre,** *to stand;* the future perfect active of **ostendere,** *to show.*

C. Write, with meanings, a synopsis of **gerere,** *to wage,* 3rd singular passive.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The little boy rises while his sick father is asleep.

2. He wishes to go to the city himself and sell everything without his father's help.

3. The boy's advice about his father's injury will be very welcome to his mother.

4. His knowledge of the whole road itself is excellent (very good), and his memory of all the names is extraordinary.

5. He prepares himself for (**ad**) the journey without fear of evil and hopes-for the protection of the gods.

6. The two wings of our army will protect the camp itself from the swift arrival of the enemy's cavalry.

233. FĀBULA DĒ PUERŌ GRAECŌ

CAPUT QUĪNTUM

MAGNAM CALAMITĀTEM[1] PRODICUS ACCIPIT

Post colloquium cum mātre Prodicus ipse ad urbem equum et carrum dūxit. Adventus ad urbem erat facilis, nam iter bene cognōverat. Omnia quae in carrō

BRIGANDS CAPTURE PRODICUS

portābat facile vēndidit. Multā nocte° cum pecūniā quam accēperat domum sē recipiēbat.° Ut māter Prodicī dīxerat, propter bellum recēns fīnēs circum urbem ipsam erant latrōnum plēnī. Mātris timor latrōnum nōn erat sine causā. Puer enim nōn mīlle passūs° aberat ā suā casā, cum sonitum magnārum et barbarārum vōcum sēnsit. Lūx erat iam obscūra[2], et puer fortis nōn poterat longius quam suam manum vidēre. Equus niger ipse cōnstitit, prōcēdere nōn cupīvit. Trāns pontem parvum prope viam erat numerus arborum minimārum, ē quibus vēnērunt trēs latrōnēs. Ūnus ex eīs caput equī nigrī tenuit; duo reliquī manūs puerī miserī occupāvērunt. Vulneribus crūdēlibus eum affēcērunt[3] atque celeriter vīcērunt. Manūs pedēsque ligāvērunt[4], ipsum in īmō carrō° dēiēcērunt. Frūstrā[5] puer miser maximā virtūte latrōnibus barbarīs[6] restitit, nam mox erat in eōrum potestāte. Trēs latrōnēs ipsī carrum tum ascendērunt atque equum timidum ad mare ēgērunt. In parvā casā ad multam noctem° pater et māter Prodicum maximō timōre exspectābant. Interim puer miserrimus ad mare tālī ratiōne tractus est.

HELPS

[1] **calamitās, -tātis,** *misfortune* [2] *dim* [3] *treated*, i.e., *wounded* [4] *bound* [5] *in vain* [6] Dative to be translated as direct object of **restitit**

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

Paucīs cārior est fidēs quam pecūnia — *To few men is honor dearer than money.*

— JUVENAL

LESSON XXXVII

THE FIFTH DECLENSION — GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

234. The Fifth Declension. The fifth and last declension contains a few nouns whose genitive singular ends in **eī**. These nouns are all feminine except **diēs**, *day*, which is usually masculine, though sometimes feminine in the singular.

Only the two nouns appearing in the following paradigm are fully declined in the plural, other nouns showing only the nominative and accusative plural.

	diēs, M., *day*		**rēs**, F., *thing**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**diēs**	**diēs**	**rēs**	**rēs**
Gen.	**diēī**	**diērum**	**reī**	**rērum**
Dat.	**diēī**	**diēbus**	**reī**	**rēbus**
Acc.	**diem**	**diēs**	**rem**	**rēs**
Abl.	**diē**	**diēbus**	**rē**	**rēbus**

In declining **diēs**, note the long **e**, which (except in the accusative singular) remains long throughout, even before a following vowel.

* The meaning "thing" is rarely used in translation. The student should select a meaning of **rēs** suggested by a study of the sentence as a whole, as: **rēs bonae**, *prosperity;* **rēs dūrae**, *hard times.*

Except in the plural, like **rēs** are declined **fidēs,** *faith, loyalty;* **spēs,** *hope;* like **diēs** is declined **aciēs,** *line of battle.*

235. The Genitive and Ablative of Description. In English we frequently use nouns as modifiers of other nouns. The most common example is the English possessive case, which in Latin becomes the possessive genitive, as: *the boy's name,* **puerī nōmen;** *the girls' mother,* **puellārum māter.** In both English and Latin, we frequently find nouns modified also by adjective phrases that name or describe some quality or qualities of the nouns they modify, as: *a soldier of great courage,* **mīles magnae virtūtis;** *a day of great events,* **diēs magnārum rērum.**

In English, too, we often speak of *a book with many chapters,* or *a garden with three gates.* As these suggest the Latin ablative, we shall feel it quite natural to find the Latin translations **liber multīs capitibus; hortus tribus portīs.**

The genitive and ablative are interchangeable in such expressions, as

mīles	**magnae virtūtis**	**liber**	**multōrum capitum**
	or		or
	magnā virtūte;		**multīs capitibus.**

So we may say: *The genitive or ablative of phrases having the force of adjectives may be used to name or describe a quality of the nouns they modify, and is called the Descriptive Genitive or Ablative.* Such a genitive or ablative must, however, always have a modifying adjective, as in the examples above; otherwise a descriptive adjective must be substituted for this construction.

The descriptive genitive or ablative may also be found in the predicate, as

Mīles erat { **magnae virtūtis,** *The soldier was a man of* / or / *great courage.* / **magnā virtūte**

236. Written Work.

A. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *what line of battle?*
(2) *a swifter arrival.*

B. Compare, with meanings, the adjective **recēns** and the adverb formed from it.

C. Write, with meanings, synopses of:

(1) **pervenīre,** *to arrive,* 3rd plural active.
(2) **cōnficere,** *to finish,* 3rd singular passive.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. It was a journey of many days from the large city to the sea.
2. Robbers with loud (great) voices captured Prodicus, a boy of the greatest loyalty.
3. The swift-footed* horse was also seized by the hands of the same robbers.
4. Meanwhile the mother and sick father of Prodicus were waiting for their son with fearful hearts.
5. At last hope of his arrival was abandoned.

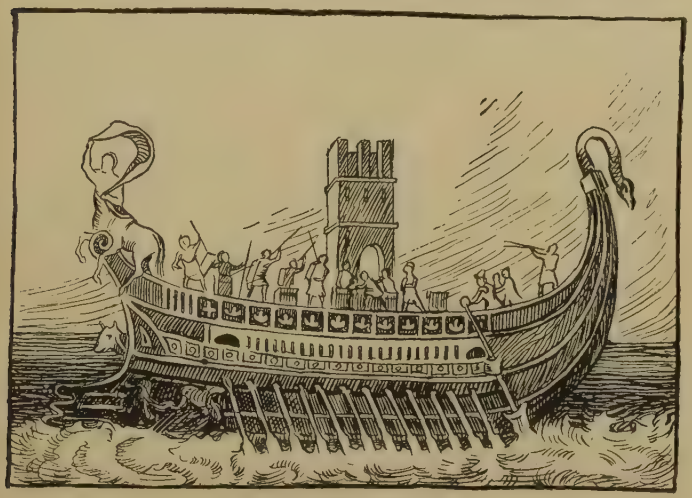
* Express by a descriptive phrase.

237. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

CAPUT SEXTUM

Dolōrēs Prodicī in Nāvī

Trēs diēs Prodicus fuerat in potestāte latrōnum. Post adventum ad mare latrōnēs ignī signum fēcērunt, quod ā nautīs nāvis magnae vīsum est. Nāvigium parvum celeri-



Navis Longa Antiqua

ter ad ignem prōcessit. In nāvigiō fuit dux latrōnum, quī sociōs equum nigrum dīmittere, puerum et pecūniam retinēre iussit. Itaque Prodicus in īmō° nāvigiō dēiectus atque ad nāvem abductus est. Quae nāvis tribus ōrdinibus rēmōrum[1] ā quadrāgintā fortibus servīs impulsa est. Prodicus plūrimōs aliōs puerōs in nāvī invēnit, quī omnēs

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

in locīs obscūrīs[2] īmae nāvis ā lūce exclūsī sunt. Miserrimī erant eī puerī, quibus rēs frūmentāria pessima et minima dabātur. Posteā aliī puerī et puellae quī ā latrōnibus captī erant in nāvem tractī sunt. Multīs post diēbus omnēs rēs parātae erant; plūrimī puerī et puellae erant in manibus latrōnum; dux nāvem ad Ītaliam prōcēdere iussit. Ōra maritima[3] Graeciae nōn iam vīsa est. Interim equus niger ab ōrā expulsus est et ad casam Prodicī sōlus sē recēpit. Timōrēs maximī patris et mātris concitātī sunt.

HELPS

[1] *of oars* [2] *dark* [3] *sea-coast*

238. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters* 4–6 *of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Cūr erat facilis adventus Prodicī ad urbem?
2. Ubi fuit Prodicus cum sonitum latrōnum sēnsit?
3. Quā in parte nāvis puerī dēiectī sunt?
4. Quam ad terram ā Graeciā nāvis prōcessit?
5. Quō posteā equus sē recēpit?

Labōrem ferunt senēs ut in ōtia tūta recēdant — Men endure toil that when old they may retire into secure repose.

— HORACE

LESSON XXXVIII

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE AND ITS USE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

239. The Subjunctive Mood. The Indicative is the mood of fact; the Subjunctive, the mood of what is treated as possible, willed, or desired. The subjunctive is usually found only in subordinate clauses, and its meaning varies with the nature of these clauses. For this reason no meanings are given in the following paradigms.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
vocem	**vocēmus**	**vocer**	**vocēmur**
vocēs	**vocētis**	**vocēris**	**vocēminī**
vocet	**vocent**	**vocētur**	**vocentur**

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL OTHER CONJUGATIONS

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
mone- **dūc-** **audi-** **capi-**	**am, ās, at** **āmus, ātis, ant**	**mone-** **dūc-** **audi-** **capi-**	**ar, āris, ātur** **āmur, āminī,** **antur**

From the above we see

(1) that the sign of the present subjunctive is **a** in all conjugations except the first, in which it is **e**.

(2) that the personal endings are those of the imperfect indicative.

To the above should be added the present subjunctive of the irregular verb **esse**: **sim, sīs, sit, sīmus, sītis, sint.**

240. Purpose Clauses. One of the common uses of the subjunctive is to express the purpose of an action described in the principal clause. In English, purpose is ordinarily expressed by the infinitive with *to*, when there is no change of subject, but never in good Latin. Suppose we desire to say in Latin:

(1) *The Greeks fight to free their country.*

When this sentence is translated into Latin, the verb *to free* must take the subjunctive mood, and we have

Graecī pugnant ut patriam līberent.

(2) *The Greeks fight in order not to be conquered.*
Graecī pugnant nē superentur.

Purpose in English is expressed by the use of *may* or *might* when the subject of the purpose clause is not the same as that of the principal clause. Such an instance would be found in translating the Latin sentence

Graecī pugnant { **ut** / **nē** } **puerī sint** { **līberī** / **servī.** }

The Greeks fight that their children { *may be free.* / *may not be slaves.* }

So we have already discovered two ways of translating the Latin subjunctive.

From these examples we may form the following rule or principle: *Purpose is expressed in Latin by the subjunctive with the conjunctions* **ut** *affirmative, and* **nē** *negative.*

241. Written Work.

A. Conjugate the present subjunctive of the following verbs:

(1) in the passive, **interficere,** *to kill,* and **concitāre,** *to arouse.*

(2) in the active, **gerere,** *to wage,* **dormīre,** *to sleep,* and **remanēre,** *to remain.*

B. Write, with meanings, indicative synopses as follows:

(1) **exclūdere,** *to shut out,* 1st plural active.

(2) **trahere,** *to drag,* 2nd plural passive.

C. With the help of an English dictionary, make a list containing all possible English derivatives of **timēre** and **audīre.** Opposite each derivative indicate what part of speech it is. Use each of these derivatives correctly in an English sentence. Write also a Latin noun and a Latin adjective related to **timēre.**

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The robbers capture boys and girls of the greatest promise (**spēs**) to sell them as* slaves.

2. The leader of the robbers gives the signal to his companions, that a boat may be sent from the ship.

3. The poor children are placed in the bottom of the ship that they may not be seen from the land.

4. The wicked men give Prodicus very bad food so that his body may not be strong.

5. They sail from Greece to carry the slaves to another country and find masters with much money.

*Omit "as," and put "slaves" in apposition with "them."

SALE OF A SLAVE

In the right hand of the slave is seen the *titulus* describing her good or bad qualities.

242. FĀBULA DĒ PUERŌ GRAECŌ

CAPUT SEPTIMUM*

SERVITŪS RŌMĀNA

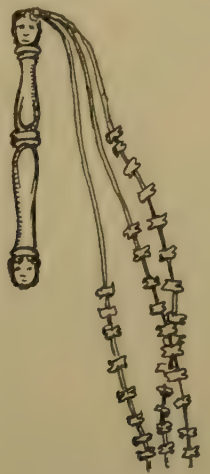
Latrōnēs Graecōs puerōs capiunt ut eōs in servitūtem vēndant. Rōmānī Graecōs servōs magnō pretiō coëmunt ut magistrōs lūdōrum, medicōs[1] perītōs, scrībās[2] bonōs habeant. Apud Rōmānōs plūrimī servī sunt captīvī bellī, sed optimī sunt saepe puerī, quī ā latrōnibus capiuntur ut

* Past tenses will be avoided in this chapter, in order to permit the use of the subjunctive, of which we have as yet learned only the present tense.

hī pecūniam accipiant. Pessima rēs est ipsa servitūs, sed peior est servitūs quā servus est saepe meliōris animī et mentis quam dominus. Exitus ē patriā est semper gravis, sed gravissima rēs est sī puer ē patriā, patre, mātre cum iniūriā ēripitur ut barbarī eum servum faciant. In urbe Rōmā sunt plūrimī servī, nē virī Rōmae labōrāre cōgantur. Numerus servōrum Rōmānōrum est multō maior quam numerus cīvium līberōrum. Multās rēs quās hominēs nostrī temporis māchinīs faciunt servī Rōmānī manibus faciunt.

HELPS

[1] *doctors* [2] *secretaries*



FLAGELLUM
(Slave Whip)

Distorquēns oculōs ut mē ēriperet — Winking my eyes so that he would rescue me.

— HORACE

LESSON XXXIX

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS — PURPOSE CLAUSES CONCLUDED — GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

243. The Imperfect Subjunctive. The imperfect occurs in Latin authors far more frequently than any other tense of the subjunctive. Fortunately this is the tense easiest to form, as it consists of the present infinitive (the second principal part) and the personal endings. Note the following paradigms and table:

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
vocārem	**vocārēmus**	**vocārer**	**vocārēmur**
vocārēs	**vocārētis**	**vocārēris**	**vocārēminī**
vocāret	**vocārent**	**vocārētur**	**vocārentur**

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL OTHER CONJUGATIONS AND OF esse

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
vocār- **monēr-** **dūcer-** **audīr-** **caper-** **ess-**	**em, ēs, et** **ēmus, etis,** **ent**	**vocār-** **monēr-** **dūcer-** **audīr-** **caper-**	**er, ēris, ētur** **ēmur, ēminī,** **entur**

244. The Imperfect Subjunctive in Purpose Clauses. The meaning of the imperfect subjunctive, like that of the present, varies with the nature of the clause in which it is found. The imperfect subjunctive in subordinate clauses occurs only after tenses relating to past time, as may be seen from the study of the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *The Greeks* { *fight* / *will fight* / *will have fought* } *to free their country.*

(Main verb not past time)

Graecī { **pugnant** / **pugnābunt** / **pugnāverint** } **ut patriam līberent.**

(2) *The Greeks* { *were fighting* / *fought* / *had fought* } *to free their country.*

(Main verb past time)

Graecī { **pugnābant** / **pugnāvērunt** / **pugnāverant** } **ut patriam līberārent.**

Note also how a subordinate clause whose subject differs from that of the main clause compels the use of *might* in translating the imperfect:

Graecī { **pugnābant** / **pugnāvērunt** / **pugnāverant** } { **ut puerī līberī essent.** / **nē puerī servī essent.** }

The Greeks { *were fighting* / *fought* / *had fought* } *that their children* { *might be free.* / *might not be slaves.* }

245. Genitive with Adjectives. *Certain adjectives of* DESIRE, PLENTY, *and* KNOWLEDGE, *and their opposites, are followed by the genitive.* Note the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *He is fond of war.*
Est cupidus bellī.

(2) *It is full of grain.*
Est plēnum frūmentī.

(3) *They are skilful in languages.*
Perītī sunt linguārum.

246. Written Work.

A. Conjugate in the subjunctive as follows:

(1) **resistere,** *to resist,* present active.
(2) **scīre,** *to know,* present passive.
(3) **cupere,** *to desire,* imperfect active.
(4) **ēripere,** *to snatch away,* imperfect passive.

B. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) In the singular only, *wretched slavery.*
(2) In the plural only, *a quick departure.*

C. Write in a column all the indicative and subjunctive verbs in **242** (Caput Septimum). Opposite each indicative verb write the past tense required by the sense, and opposite each present subjunctive its imperfect subjunctive.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Many Romans wished to have slaves skilled in languages to write books.

2. Rome was full of Greek slaves who had formerly been of higher (greater) position than their new masters.

3. Prodicus and the other captives were most desirous of freedom in order that they might return to their native country.

4. They take away (**abdūcere**) the children from their fathers and mothers to compel them to work in another country.

5. In our country all the slaves were freed so that men's bodies might not be sold.

247. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput octāvum

Prodicus in Servitūtem Vēnditur

Multīs post diēbus nāvis latrōnum cum vīvō onere[1] puerōrum prope Portum Brundisium pervēnit. Dux latrōnum cum paucīs nautīs nāvigiō parvō multā° nocte ad id propinquum oppidum nāvigāvit. Mox cum amīcō ad nāvem sē recēpit. Is amīcus servōs coëmēbat et vēndēbat. Eī quī servōs coëmēbant et vēndēbant vēnālīciī appellābantur. Is vēnālīcius erat mercātor crūdēlissimae speciēī[2] et magnae vōcis. Puerī omnēs ē somnō celeriter excitātī sunt[3] ut sē eī ostenderent. Omnēs puerōs mercātor coëmit, sed Prodicus maximum praemium latrōnibus reportāvit, quod erat puer pulcherrimō corpore et ācerrimā mente. Proximā nocte puerī, quī iam erant servī, in nāvigiīs parvīs positī sunt, ut ad terram trādūcerentur atque mercātōrī trāderentur. Puerīs miserīs grātum fuit in terrā firmā iterum esse post longum iter trāns mare. Sed iter multō longius et multīs rēbus difficilius manēbat. Nam erat necesse trecenta mīlia

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

passuum ad urbem Rōmam ambulāre ut puerī satis magnō pretiō vēnderentur. Tōtum diem ambulābant, et nocte in malīs dēversōriīs[4] aut in agrīs sine tēctīs dormiēbant ut mercātor suam pecūniam servāret. Rēs frūmentāria erat parva atque paene peior quam in nāvī latrōnum. Prope

Scene on the Appian Way

oppidum minimum quod Anxur appellābātur, duo ex puerīs dolōribus et lassitūdine[5] cōnfectī sunt. Nē mors quidem erat illīs peior quam vīta tam crūdēlis generis. Illī puerī aegrī prope iter ā mercātōre relictī sunt ut mortem exspectārent.

HELPS

[1] *burden, cargo* [2] *appearance* [3] *were roused* [4] *inns* [5] *weariness*

248. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters 7–8 of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Quō cōnsiliō (*for what purpose*) capiēbant latrōnēs puerōs Graecōs?
2. Quō cōnsiliō coëmēbant Rōmānī servōs Graecōs?
3. Eratne numerus cīvium līberōrum maior quam servōrum?
4. Quis omnium puerōrum maximum praemium latrōnibus reportāvit? Cūr?
5. Cūr erat necesse ad urbem Rōmam ambulāre?

Vidēs ut altā stet nive candidum — You see how white it (Mt. Soracte) stands in depths of snow.

— HORACE

LESSON XL

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE — INDIRECT QUESTIONS — SEQUENCE OF TENSES

249. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Active. The subjunctive mood has but four tenses — the Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The perfect and pluperfect active are very simply formed by adding to the perfect stem certain tense signs before the personal endings, as may be seen by the study of the following paradigms and tables:

FIRST CONJUGATION

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
vocāverim	**vocāverīmus**	**vocāvissem**	**vocāvissēmus**
vocāverīs	**vocāverītis**	**vocāvissēs**	**vocāvissētis**
vocāverit	**vocāverint**	**vocāvisset**	**vocāvissent**

ALL CONJUGATIONS AND esse.

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
vocāv- **monu-** **dūx-** **audīv-** **cēp-** **fu-**	**erim, erīs, erit** **erīmus, erītis,** **erint**	**vocāv-** **monu-** **dūx-** **audīv-** **cēp-** **fu-**	**issem, issēs, isset** **issēmus, issētis, issent**

In what respect do the forms of the perfect subjunctive active differ from those of the future perfect indicative active?

250. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive. These tenses are compound tenses like the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive. As will be seen from the tables following, they are formed very simply by combining the present and imperfect subjunctive of **esse** with the perfect passive participle, which is made to agree in G. N. C. with the verb's subject:

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

PERFECT

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
vocātus **monitus** **ductus** **audītus** **captus**	**sim, sīs, sit**	**vocātī** **monitī** **ductī** **audītī** **captī**	**sīmus, sītis, sint**

PLUPERFECT

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
vocātus **monitus** **ductus** **audītus** **captus**	**essem, essēs, esset**	**vocātī** **monitī** **ductī** **audītī** **captī**	**essēmus, essētis, essent**

251. Indirect Questions. Of the many uses of the subjunctive, we shall now study Indirect Questions, which will give us practice in the use of all tenses of the subjunctive. An indirect question is one that is woven into the

structure of a sentence, and is always the object (or subject) of a verb of mental action, such as seeing, hearing, knowing, asking. Note the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *I see what you are doing.*
Videō quid faciās.
(2) *I see what you have done.*
Videō quid fēcerīs.
(3) *I saw what you were doing.*
Vīdī quid facerēs.
(4) *I saw what you had done.*
Vīdī quid fēcissēs.

Observe that the subjunctive forms in (1) and (3) express action going on or incomplete at the time of the main verb, while (2) and (4) express action past or complete at the time of the main verb.

252. Sequence of Tenses. The above arrangement shows what is known as the Sequence of Tenses, for which we may frame the following simple principles or rules:

(1) The present and imperfect subjunctive are (as their names, present and imperfect, imply) the tenses of incomplete action, the former occurring only after main verbs in tenses other than past, the latter only after main verbs in past tenses.

(2) The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive (as their names imply) are the tenses of completed action, the former occurring only after main verbs in tenses other than past, the latter only after main verbs in past tenses.

The following table may assist in understanding the sequence of tenses:

	MAIN VERB INDICATIVE	SUBORDINATE VERB SUBJUNCTIVE
Non-Past	Present Future Future Perfect	Present—*Incomplete* Perfect—*Complete*
Past	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect—*Incomplete* Pluperfect—*Complete*

253. Written Work.

A. Conjugate in the subjunctive:

(1) the perfect active of **pervenīre,** *to arrive.*

(2) the pluperfect active of **manēre,** *to remain.*

(3) the perfect passive of **vincere,** *to conquer.*

(4) the pluperfect passive of **ēripere,** *to snatch away.*

B. Write subjunctive synopses as follows:

(1) **concitāre,** *to arouse,* 3rd plural active.

(2) **gerere,** *to wage,* 3rd singular passive.

C. Decline in Latin:

(1) *a very wretched death.*

(2) *a grain supply* (**rēs frūmentāria**) in singular only.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

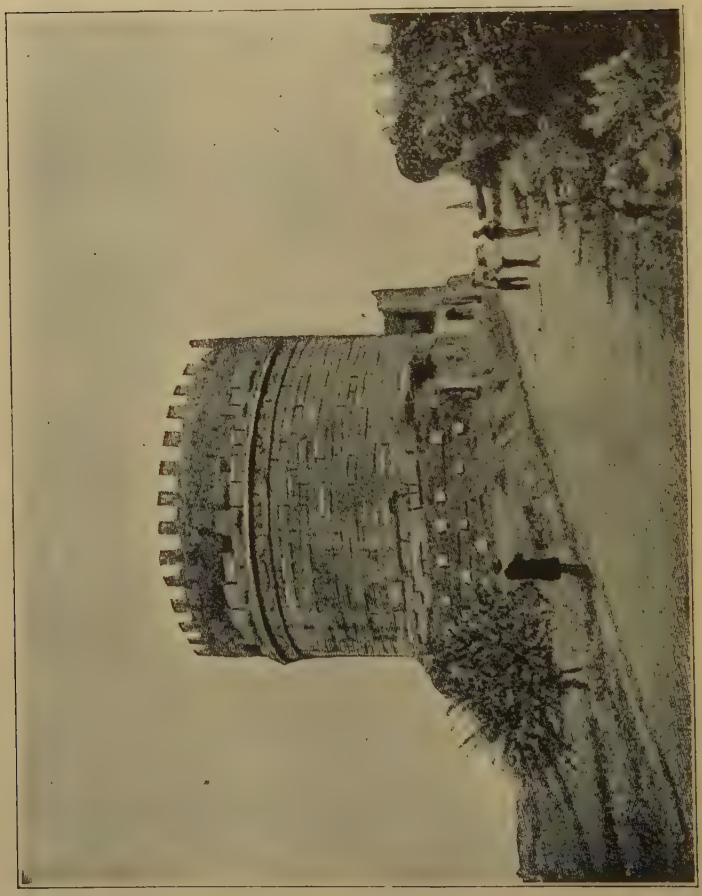
1. The father and mother of Prodicus did not know where their son was.

2. They had not learned why he had not returned from the city that day.

3. The robbers knew who bought Greek boys to sell to others.

4. All the slaves see why the two sick boys are left on the road.

5. Afterward the rest of the captives will hear why they have been saved from death.



UNUM E SEPULCRIS ANTIQUIS

254. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput nōnum

Adventus Servōrum ad Urbem Rōmam

Reliquum iter ad magnam urbem erat minus difficile quod in hāc terrā perductus erat canālis aquae plēnus ut nāvigia mūlīs dūcerentur. Quis vestrum discipulōrum ignōrat quō modō nāvigium mūlīs dūcātur?

Mercātor morte duōrum puerōrum perterritus erat et servōs parvōs in nāvigium pepulit nē plūrēs dolōribus interficerentur. Multa rēs frūmentāria ā servīs nunc accepta est, nē famē[1] ante adventum cōnficerentur. Nōn propter beneficium sed cupiditātem ea omnia ā mercātōre facta sunt, ut corpora puerōrum satis pulchra et grāta eīs redderet quī servōs in urbe coëmēbant.

Puerī miserī et timidī ignōrābant quā viā vēnissent aut[2] quem ad locum iter facerent. Prīmā° lūce sextī diēī ē nāvigiō omnēs tandem dēscendērunt atque inter sē vinculīs[3] levibus colligātī sunt[4], nē in viīs urbis sē ēriperent; nam Rōmae iam appropinquābant. Ad extrēmam° Viam Appiam[5] ambulābant, ubi multa sepulcra[6] alba cīvium amplissimōrum Rōmae antīquae vīdērunt. Per portam Capēnam in urbem inductī sunt. Quis dīcere potest quantam multitūdinem hominum in viīs urbis maximae vīderint?

HELPS

[1] *from hunger* [2] *or* [3] *chains* [4] *were bound* [5] *the Appian Way* [6] *tombs*

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

Cēnābis bene . . . sī tibi deī favent — *You will dine well if the gods favor you.*

— CATULLUS

LESSON XLI

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE AND COMPOUND VERBS — DECLENSION OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR NOUNS

255. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. *Certain verbs meaning* COMMAND, OBEY, INJURE, ENVY, PERSUADE, RESIST, *take a dative translated as a direct object.* The verbs most commonly taking this construction are **imperāre,** *command;* **parēre,** *obey;* **nocēre,** *injure;* **invidēre,** *envy;* **persuādēre,** *persuade;* **resistere,** *resist.* The last named verb, **resistere,** we have already found with the dative in our reading of Latin. Note the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *Prodicus bravely resisted the robbers.*
Prodicus latrōnibus fortiter restitit.

(2) *You injured me.*
Mihi nocuistī.

(3) *Caesar envied Pompey.*
Caesar Pompēiō invīdit.

256. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Though called intransitive verbs, two of the verbs named above take as direct objects noun clauses called substantive clauses of purpose, as may be seen from the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *The general commanded the allies to provide a supply of grain.*
Imperātor sociīs imperāvit ut cōpiam frūmentī parārent.

(2) *He persuades me not to resist evil.*
Mihi persuādet nē malō resistam.

257. Dative with Compound Verbs. *Certain verbs compounded with the prepositions* **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** *and* **super** *take a dative translated as a direct object.* When the simple verb is transitive, however, such a compound may simply take an indirect object in addition to the direct object, as may be seen from the second of the following sentences:

(1) *The four hundred boys were present at the school, for which ten teachers were lacking.*
Quadringentī puerī scholae intererant, cui decem magistrī dēerant.

(2) *The man whom Caesar put in charge of the tower commanded the whole army.*
Is, quem Caesar turrī praefēcit, tōtī exercituī praefuit.

258. Declension of *domus* and *vīs*. The nouns **domus,** *house, home,* and **vīs,** *force, violence,* (plural *strength*), are so irregular as to need special attention. Observe that **domus** is a noun of mixed declension, having forms of the second as well as of the fourth declension, while **vīs,** a third declension noun, has a different base in the plural:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**	Acc.	**vim**	**vīrīs (-ēs)**
Gen.	**(vīs)***	**vīrium**	Abl.	**vī**	**vīribus**
Dat.	**(vī)***	**vīribus**			

* Rare forms.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**domus**	**domūs**	Acc.	**domum**	**domōs** or **domūs**
Gen.	**domūs**	**domōrum** or **domuum**	Abl.	**domō** or **domū**	**domibus**
Dat.	**domuī** or **domō**	**domibus**	Loc.	**domī** (*at home*)	

259. The Locative Case. In the declension of **domus** we observe a new case known as the Locative: **domī,** *at home.* Locative forms are common in the case of names of towns, and must be used instead of the ablative to express place where; as, **Rōmae,** *at Rome;* **Corinthī,** *at Corinth;* **Athēnīs,** *at Athens.* From the above we see that singular locative forms of nouns of the first and second declensions are identical with the genitive singular; plurals with the ablative plural. Note that locatives require no preposition.

260. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of all indicative forms, complete synopses as follows:

(1) **trādere,** *to hand over,* 3rd plural active.

(2) **perterrēre,** *to alarm,* 1st plural passive.

B. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *a well-known harbor.*

(2) *the city of* Rome* (singular only).

C. With the help of an English dictionary make a list of all possible English words derived from (1) **nāvigāre,** *to sail;* (2) **docēre,** *to teach* or *show.* Only one common prefix is used in composition with **nāvigāre,** and none with **docēre.** Use each English word correctly in a sentence.

* Not genitive in Latin. Why?

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The leader of the robbers commanded the slaves to obey their new masters.
2. We cannot persuade our friends to remain at home.
3. What Roman will put in charge of his home a slave who has not obeyed him?
4. In Greece Prodicus had been free; but in Rome he was a poor slave.
5. At Rome and in other cities of the same country there were many slaves of great strength and knowledge.

261. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput decimum

Fortūna Mala et Bona

Erat diēs et plūrimī cīvēs ambulābant quod neque equōs neque mūlōs dūcere diē licēbat. Paucī ē cīvibus nōbilissimīs lectīcīs[1] ā servīs magnīs et fortibus portābantur. Servī quī lectīcās portābant vestem viridem[2] et rūfam sed dominī in lectīcīs albam gerēbant. Ūna ex eīs lectīcīs, quā sedēbat cum patre puer Rōmānus togā praetextā vestītus[3], maximā vī pressa et in cohortem servōrum impulsa est.

Via erat angusta et hominum multitūdine impedīta[4]. Prodicus, quī cum reliquīs servīs colligātus est[5], ad terram graviter dēiectus est. Ubi puer Rōmānus dolōrem Prodicī vīdit, servīs ut lectīcam dēpōnerent imperāvit. Dē lectīcā celeriter dēscendit, multitūdinem reppulit, ad Prodicum successit. Linguā Graecā puer Rōmānus ē Prodicō quaesīvit quam graviter esset vulnerātus. Interim pater quoque puerī Rōmānī dēscendere contendit et

STREET SCENE IN ROME

Note the sedan chair in the left foreground, and to the right the magistrate preceded by lictors.

ūnum ē suīs servīs, quī medicus Graecus erat, vocāvit. Medicus dominō celeriter paruit. Crūs[6] Prodicī frāctum[7] erat, atque eius dolor erat magnus. Ubi puer Rōmānus vīdit quam pulcher et pallidus[8] esset Prodicus, patrī persuāsit ut puerum Graecum sibi coëmeret. Pater Rōmānus, quī ipse erat bonō animō, fīliō nōn restitit, et multam pecūniam mercātōrī dedit. Itaque Prodicus servus bonī puerī Rōmānī redditus est.

HELPS

[1] *sedan chairs* [2] *green* [3] *clothed in a white toga with a red border* [4] past participle [5] *was tied together* [6] *leg* [7] *broken* [8] *pale*

Nātūra abhorret ā vacuō — *Nature dreads a vacuum.*
— A PRINCIPLE OF PHYSICS

LESSON XLII

PLACE RELATIONS — ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

262. The Expression of Place Relations. We are already familiar with phrases expressing *place to which*, *place from which*, and *place where*, as used in the following sentences:

(1) *The citizens are coming* { *to the city.* / *into the town.*

Ad urbem / **In oppidum** } **cīvēs veniunt.**

(2) *The citizens are coming* { *from the city.* / *down the mountain.* / *out of the town.*

Ab urbe / **Dē monte** / **Ex oppidō** } **cīvēs veniunt.**

(3) *The boys are* { *in the city.* / *on the ship.*

Puerī sunt { **in urbe.** / **in nāvī.**

We may summarize the above by stating that: PLACE TO WHICH *is expressed by the accusative with* **ad** *or* **in**; PLACE FROM WHICH, *by the ablative with* **ab, dē,** *or* **ex**; PLACE WHERE *or* IN WHICH, *by the ablative with* **in.**

263. Place Relations Involving Names of Towns. Now examine the following sentences, noting how they differ from the above:

(1) *The citizens are coming* { *to Rome.* / *to the country.* / *home.* }

Rōmam / **Rūs** / **Domum** } **cīvēs veniunt.**

Note that in English we say "I am going home," omitting the preposition. The Roman employed similar abbreviations with regard to his visits to the country or towns.

(2) *The citizens are coming* { *from Rome.* / *from the country.* / *from home.* }

Rōmā / **Rūre** / **Domō** } **cīvēs veniunt.**

(3) *The boys are* { *at* (or *in*) *Rome.* / *in the country.* / *at home.* }

Puerī sunt { **Rōmae.** / **rūrī.** / **domī.** }

By examining the above sentences, we see that if a phrase expressing place contains **domus, rūs,** or the name of a town, the preposition is omitted, and to express *place where,* a different case is used, *the locative.*

264. Ablative of Separation. Hardly distinguishable from the ablative of *place from which* is the so-called Ablative of Separation, which occurs with verbs meaning *to be away, to keep away, to set free, to deprive of*. This ablative is found with the same prepositions, **ab, dē,** and **ex,** even when the verb is compounded with one of these prepositions. Such an ablative, however, requires no preposition when the separation is figurative or imaginary rather than physical and actual. The following expressions will serve to illustrate this construction:

abesse ab urbe, *to be away from the city*
ā servitūte līberāre, *to set free from slavery*
laude dēsistere, *to cease praising*
aquā prīvāre, *to cut off from water*

When the verb is a verb of motion, however, it is best to regard the ablative as an ablative of place from which.

265. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, complete synopses as follows:

(1) **quaerere,** *to ask*, 2nd plural active.
(2) **perterrēre,** *to frighten*, 3rd plural passive.

B. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *a better master.*
(2) *very keen hope.*

C. Make a derivation table for **sedēre,** *to sit*, using prefixes **ob, prae, sub** (*under*). Use English derivatives in sentences as previously directed. Do not overlook the derivatives which show the stem **sess-.**

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Many men had come from the country to Rome to see that very beautiful city.

2. Prodicus, who had been brought from Greece, found a new home at Rome.

3. He persuaded his father to rescue the Greek boy from slavery.

4. Soon we shall hasten away from Rome to the country to see our friends.

5. The slave was taken home by his new master, and ceased fearing (from fear).

6. In our country all men have been set free from slavery, and it is no longer lawful to have slaves.

266. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput ūndecimum

Vīlla Rōmāna Pānsae Patris

Postquam parvus puer Rōmānus patrī persuāsit ut Prodicum coëmeret, hic ex urbe ad vīllam magnificam prope Rōmam ductus est. Circum vīllam erant pulchrī hortī rosārum et aliōrum flōrum[1] multīs colōribus plēnī. Erat quoque in hortīs lacus[2] satis magnus ubi nābant[3] piscēs[4] multōrum colōrum quī ex aliīs terrīs magnō pretiō dēlēctī et coāctī erant. Circum lacum arborēs multae et magnae circumdatae erant, quae umbram[5] gelidam[6] in aquam lacūs dēiciēbant. Trāns ūnum fīnem lacūs pōns pulcherrimus trāiectus est, quō dominus benignus Prodicī cotīdiē imperābat ut servus crūre frāctō[7] addūcerētur. Prīmum Graecē (linguā Graecā) inter sē verba faciēbant, sed paucīs post diēbus Prodicus quaerere incipiēbat quibus

verbīs Latīnē (linguā Latīnā) rēs appellārentur. Hōc modō servus dominum verba Graeca, dominus servum Latīna docēbat. Hōrās multās et laetās duo puerī inter sē agēbant, atque alter alterum multum amābat. Parvus servus vīrēs incolumēs sine difficultāte recēpit, atque

Roman Villa

parvus dominus cum servō parvō diēs longōs et pulchrōs aestātis condiciōnibus familiāribus et amīcissimīs agēbat. Vīta omnium servōrum, quī ducentī in vīllā hortīsque labōrābant, nōn erat ita facilis. Erat servus multōs annōs nātus qui vīlicus appellābātur. Is servus praecipiēbat quid reliquī servī facerent, atque dē illīs quī eī dīligenter nōn parēbant, poenās gravīs saepe sūmēbat°. Apud servōs commūne odium eius vīlicī erat maximum.

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

HELPS

[1] *flowers* [2] **lacus, -ūs,** *lake* [3] *were swimming* [4] *fish* [5] *shade* [6] *cool* [7] *with the broken leg*

267. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters* 9–11 *of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Quō cōnsiliō pepulit mercātor servōs in nāvigium?
2. Cūr ambulābant plūrimī cīvēs in viīs Rōmae?
3. Ubi Prodicus ad terram dēiectus est, quid quaesīvit puer Rōmānus?
4. Quid patrī persuāsit ut faceret?
5. Quid faciēbant parvus dominus et servus in vīllā Pānsae patris?

HORTUS

Noctēs vigilābat ad ipsum mane; diem tōtum stertēbat — Nights he staid awake till very morn; all day he snored.
— HORACE

LESSON XLIII

TIME AND SPACE RELATIONS — FORMATION OF NOUNS FROM VERBS

268. Accusative of Time and Space. In our reading of Latin we have often met easily translatable expressions such as **multōs annōs, trēs diēs** (answering the question *how long?*) in sentences similar to the following:

(1) **Multōs annōs in Graeciā habitāvit.**
He lived in Greece many years.

(2) **Trēs diēs ad mare ambulāvērunt.**
They walked three days toward the sea.

Such expressions may answer the question *how far?* as well as *how long?*— as in the following sentence:

Mīlle passūs ambulāvit.
He walked a thousand paces (i.e. a mile).

So we may frame the following rule:

Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition. What questions are answered by such accusatives?

269. Ablative of Time. In our reading of Latin we have also often met with ablatives answering the question *when?*— as in the following sentences:

(1) **Eō tempore bellum Rōmae gerēbātur.**
At that time war was going on at Rome.

(2) **Illō ipsō diē Prodicus ā latrōnibus captus est.**
That very day Prodicus was captured by robbers.

After observing these expressions of time we may frame the following rule:

TIME WHEN *is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

270. Formation of Nouns from Verbs. In English many nouns which are the names of actions are formed from verbs by the addition of certain suffixes; as, *judge, judgment; arrive, arrival; expect, expectation.* Similarly, many Latin nouns are formed from Latin verbs by the use of suffixes. Among the commonest suffixes added to verb stems are **tus, tiō,** and **ium.** These form nouns denoting an action or the result of an action. We have already met some of these nouns, sometimes without knowing the verb from which the noun is derived. Note the following table:

VERB	MEANING	SUFFIX denoting act of	NOUN	MEANING
advenīre	*to come to*	**-tus, -ūs**	**adventus**	*act of coming to, arrival*
ōrāre	*to plead*	**-tiō, -ōnis**	**ōrātiō**	*act of pleading, plea, speech*
iūdicāre	*to judge*	**-ium, -ī**	**iūdicium**	*act of judging, judgment, court*

271. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, complete synopses as follows:

(1) **circumdare,** *to place around,* 1st plural active.

(2) **dēpōnere,** *to put down,* 2nd singular passive.

B. Compare, with meanings, the adjectives **benignus,** *kind,* and **crūdēlis,** *cruel,* and the adverbs formed from them.

C. Make a derivation table for **sūmere**, using the prefixes **ad, con, re**; and for **scrībere**, using the prefixes **con, dē, in, prae, prō, sub, trāns***. Use English derivatives in sentences as previously directed.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The two hundred slaves of the cruel master often used to work both day and night (*pl.*).
2. Some remained for many hours in the fields and gardens, others in the farmhouse.
3. At this time Prodicus, who had been wounded, was not able to walk many feet alone.
4. For many days the Roman boy used to talk with Prodicus in order to learn the Greek language.
5. He did not know why his life in the country was easier and happier than (that) of the other slaves.

272. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput duodecimum

Adventus Domum Urbānam[1]

Diēs pulchrī et longī aestātis celeriter praeteriērunt[2]; hiems appropinquābat. Tandem necesse erat rūre Rōmam discēdere. Nōn oportet dīcere quantō dolōre Prodicus et parvus dominus agrōs et hortōs rūris relīquerint. Ōlim nocte omnia impedīmenta in mūlōs ā servīs posita sunt. Pānsa pater et fīlius et Prodicus equīs iter fēcērunt; reliquī carrīs successērunt. Iter nocturnum[3] erat necessārium quod equōs, mūlōs, carrōs in viīs Rōmae diē dūcere nōn licēbat. Ante lūcem omnēs ad portam Septentriōnālem

* The final **s** of the preposition **trāns** is dropped before the initial **s** of the verb.

urbis magnae pervēnērunt. Per viās angustissimās atque impedītās multitūdō servōrum, equōrum, mūlōrum, carrōrum, inter sē premēbant. Omnēs properābant ut domum ante lūcem pervenīrent. Ubīque[4] erant multī ignēs taedārum[5] quās servī incendēbant atque per viās portābant.

TABERNA ROMANA

Prīmā lūce familia Lūcī Cornēlī Pānsae ad domum magnam appropinquāvit. Haec domus īnsula appellāta est quod erat sōla et sēcrēta[6] ab aliīs domibus. Exteriōrēs et īnferiōrēs[7] partēs domūs prope viam erant parvae tabernae quae adventū familiae Pānsae ā servīs aperiēbantur[8]. Portae eārum tabernārum gravibus tabulīs ligneīs[9] per noctem clausae erant, quae iam dēpōnēbantur. Tabernae exstruēbantur mercibus[10] generum

omnium — legūminibus[11], carne[12] multōrum animālium, veste — quae omnia erant bona Pānsae patris, cuius servī ea vēndēbant.

HELPS

[1] **urbānus, -a, -um,** adj. from **urbs** [2] *passed* [3] *by night* [4] *everywhere* [5] *of torches* [6] *separate* [7] *outer and lower* [8] **aperīre,** *to open*, cf. aperture [9] *of wood* [10] *wares* [11] *vegetables* [12] *flesh, meat*

Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs — I fear Greeks even when bringing gifts.

— VIRGIL

LESSON XLIV

FORMATION, DECLENSION, AND USES OF PARTICIPLES

273. Participial Formation. In compound tenses of the passive voice we have been using the perfect passive participle, the fourth principal part. We shall now learn how to form the other three participles of the Latin verb, from the study of the following paradigms:

FIRST CONJUGATION

Present Active **vocāns,** *calling*
Future Active **vocātūrus,** *going-to-call*
Perfect Passive **vocātus,** *(having been) called*
Future Passive* **vocandus,** *to-be-called*

ALL OTHER CONJUGATIONS

PRESENT ACTIVE	FUTURE ACTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE	FUTURE PASSIVE*
monēns	monitūrus	monitus	monendus
dūcēns	ductūrus	ductus	dūcendus
capiēns	captūrus	captus	capiendus
audiēns	audītūrus	audītus	audiendus

* This participle is also called the Gerundive, and in the neuter frequently appears in English words, especially in the plural, as *memorandum, memoranda, agenda, propaganda.*

Regarding the formation of participles we may now observe

1. that the present active and future passive participles are formed by adding **ns** and **ndus** to the present stem, which in **iō** verbs has the form **ending in ie, not e.**

CLAVIS
A conclave was a room entered with a key.

2. that the future active and perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem, found in the fourth **principal part.**

The verb **esse** has but one participle, **futūrus,** *about-to-be,* from which we obtain the English word *future.*

274. Declension of Participles. Latin participles are verbal adjectives, and as adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. Hence, like all adjectives, they are declined. The perfect passive and future active and passive participles are declined exactly like adjectives of the first and second declension, as:

	PERFECT PASSIVE	FUTURE ACTIVE	FUTURE PASSIVE
Nom.	**vocātus, -a, -um**	**vocātūrus, -a, -um**	**vocandus, -a, -um**
Gen.	**vocātī, -ae, -ī,** etc.	**vocātūrī, -ae, -ī,** etc.	**vocandī, -ae, -ī,** etc.

The present active participle is declined like an adjective of the third declension showing but one ending in the nominative singular, as may be seen from the following paradigm:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	vocāns		vocantēs	vocantia
Gen.	vocantis		vocantium	
Dat.	vocantī		vocantibus	
Acc.	vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs (īs)	vocantia
Abl.	vocante (ī)		vocantibus	

Observe that the ablative singular ends regularly in -e, but -ī is used if the participle is treated as a pure adjective, as **praesentī tempore,** *at the present time.*

CUBICULUM

Bedrooms were small, opening on the inner court with only a small outside window.

275. Uses of Participles. From the above we observe that the Latin language has no present passive or perfect active participle. However, in Latin, participles occur more frequently than in English and are often best translated by relative clauses, as may be seen from the study of the following illustrative sentences:

(1) **Facile est amīcum laudantem audīre.**
It is easy to listen to a friend who praises one.

(2) **Nihil dē mortuīs nisi bonum.**
Nothing but good of those who are dead.

(3) **Nōs moritūrī tē salūtāmus.***
We who are about to die greet you.

* The formal greeting to the emperor by the gladiators as they entered the arena in ancient Rome.

(4) **Pauca dē rēbus agendīs dīcam.**
I shall speak briefly about things that are to be done.

276. Written Work.

A. Write, with names of tenses and meaning of each form, all the participles of **vidēre,** *to see,* **trahere,** *to drag,* and **facere,** *to make.*

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, complete synopses as follows:

(1) **persuādēre,** *to persuade,* 3rd plural active.
(2) **sūmere,** *to take,* 3rd singular passive.

C. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *an easier journey.*
(2) *a very difficult word.*

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The wounded slave remained in the country for the whole summer.

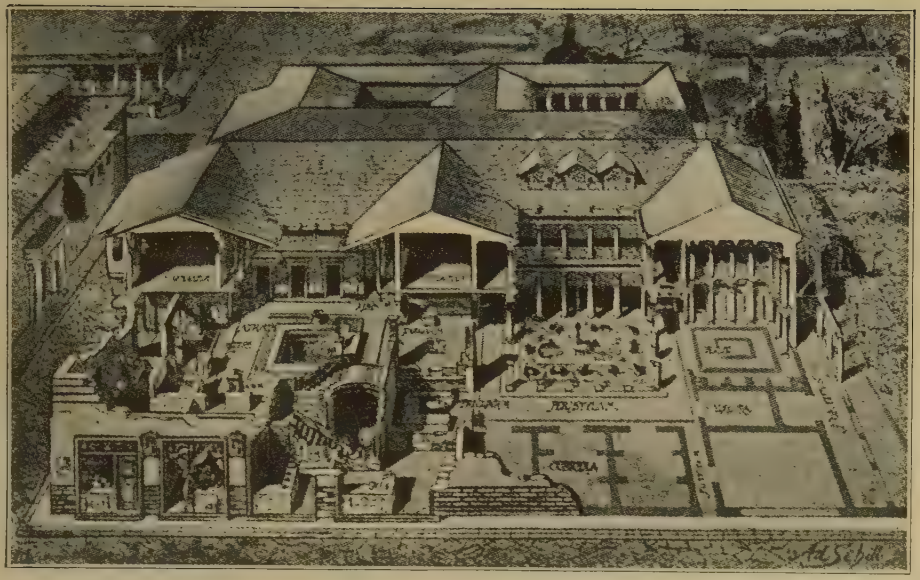
2. The Roman boy, taught by Prodicus, soon learned the Greek language.

3. They saw a great crowd excited by the approach of the horses and wagons.

4. The baggage, which* has been placed on horses, is drawn through the narrow streets of the city with the greatest difficulty.

5. Some slaves were going-to-remain in the farmhouse; others, compelled by their master, returned to Rome.

* Change the relative clause to a participle. What number will the participle and the verb be?



MODEL OF A ROMAN HOUSE

Note how the roofs slope inward to the atrium on the left, and the peristylum on the right.

277. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

CAPUT TERTIUM DECIMUM

Domus Rōmāna — Pars Prīma

Domus magna quam familia Pānsae hieme habitābat erat dissimillima domuī maximae Americānae. Ut sentiāmus quam fuerit dissimilis domibus nostrīs, necesse est imāginem hortī magnī et pulchrī nōbīs prōpōnere. Arborēs magnae et parvae, herbae[1] et rosae generum ēgregiōrum et singulārium, viae pulchrae ubīque[2] perductae, in hōc amplō hortō videntur. Circum hortum quattuor in partibus sunt multae columnae[3] capitibus ōrnātissimīs, quae quattuor tēcta ad hortum spectantia sustinent. Sub eīs tēctīs atque post columnās sunt multa conclāvia[4], alia maiōra, alia minōra. Quid est conclāve? Est pars domūs quae clāvī[5] clauditur. Alia conclāvia, cubicula[6] appellāta, sunt in secundō tabulātō[7], ad quod hominēs scālīs[8] ascendunt ut nocte dormiant. Ad angulōs[9] summī° tēctī sunt duae turrēs ē quibus spectātōrēs tōtam urbem vidēre possunt. Alia conclāvia in prīmō tabulātō sunt trīclīnia atque culīnae, ubi hominēs edunt[10] et servī cibum parant.

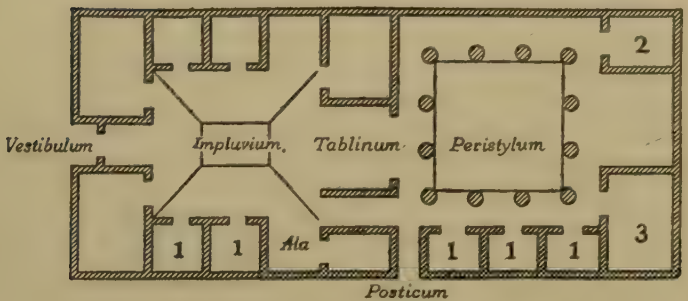
Hortus et aedificia circumdata peristȳlum appellantur. Hic hortus lātus et pulcher est locus familiae grātissimus. Omnia conclāvia ad hortum spectant; neque fenestrae neque portae ad viam pūblicam prōiciuntur. Quamquam[11] peristȳlum erat posteriōre[12] in parte domūs, id prīmum exposuimus quod erat locus ubi familia plūrimum tempus agēbat. Quā in parte erant loca prīvāta

°This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

atque familiāria. Reliqua pars domūs maximae eādem ratiōne īnstrūcta erat. Omnēs fenestrae ad interiōrem domum spectābant.

HELPS

[1] *grass* [2] *everywhere* [3] *columns* [4] *rooms* [5] *with a key* [6] *bedrooms* [7] *floor* [8] *by stairs*, cf. scale [9] *corners*, cf. angle [10] *eat*, cf. edible [11] *although* [12] *back*



PLAN OF A ROMAN HOUSE

1, 1 Cubicula, 2 culina, 3 triclinium.

Dīcere eandem rem commūtātīs verbīs atque sententiīs — Saying the same thing while changing the words and sentences.
— CICERO

LESSON XLV

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE — DEFECTIVE VERBS

278. The Ablative Absolute. In English we sometimes meet with such sentences as

The signal given, the general began the battle.

In this sentence the noun *signal* is said to be in the nominative case, and this construction is called the nominative independent or nominative absolute. Now in translating this sentence into Latin, we put the noun *signal* and its agreeing participle in the ablative case and call the construction the Ablative Absolute.

This Latin sentence,

Signō datō, imperātor proelium commīsit,

may be variously translated into English, as:

At (or upon) a given signal
When the signal was given
Since the signal was given
Having given the signal
} *the general began the battle.*

or

The signal was given and the general began the battle.

Similarly we may use the present active participle in the ablative absolute, as:

Mē imperante, proelium commissum est.

While a literal (or word for word) translation of this sentence would be,

I commanding, the battle was begun,

a better translation would be,

At my command
When I commanded } *the battle was begun.*
Since I commanded

or

I gave the command and the battle was begun.

The future active and passive participles are never used in the ablative absolute.

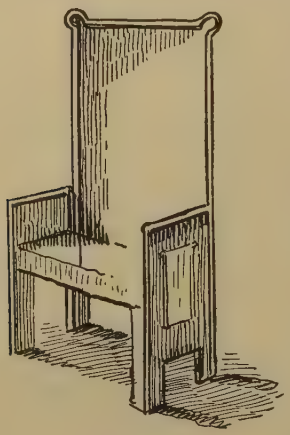
To summarize we may say: *The present active or perfect passive participle in agreement with an ablative noun or pronoun is used independently in what is known as the Ablative Absolute.*

279. Defective Verbs. The verbs **coepī,** *I began,* and **ōdī,** *I hate,* are found only in the perfect system and so are said to be defective verbs (from the Latin verb **dēficere,** *to be lacking*). Note in the following synopses that **ōdī,** though perfect, has a present meaning, while the missing present system of **coepī** may be supplied by **incipere,** *to begin.*

Perf.	**coepī,** *I began*	**ōdī,** *I hate*
Plup.	**coeperam,** *I had begun*	**ōderam,** *I hated*
Fut. Perf.	**coeperō,** *I shall have begun*	**ōderō,** *I shall hate*

280. Written Work.

A. Write, with names and translations, all the participles of **circumdare,** *to surround,* **quaerere,** *to ask,* and **sentīre,** *to feel.*



SOLIUM

The chair of state occupied by the master of the house when receiving his political dependents.

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, complete synopses as follows:

(1) **surgere,** *to rise,* 1st singular active.

(2) **repellere,** *to drive back,* 3rd plural passive.

C. Decline in Latin:

(1) *a very large house* (including locative singular)

(2) *the same wound.*

D. *Translate into Latin, using an ablative absolute in each sentence:*

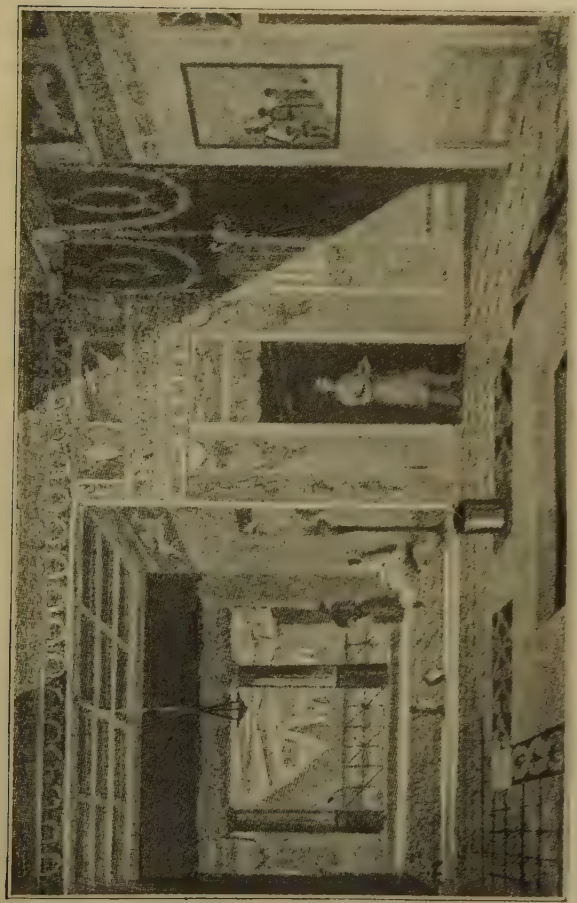
1. As all the parts of the house faced toward the garden, it was easy to see the beautiful trees.

2. Having spent much time in the country, Pansa returned to Rome.

3. At your command, the slaves began to prepare the food.

4. When he had learned the language, the slave no longer hated his Roman master.

5. Although the narrow streets were blocked, all arrived home at dawn.



House of the Tragic Poet at Pompeii
The atrium in foreground, the peristylum in background.

281. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput quārtum decimum

Domus Rōmāna — Pars Secunda

Peristȳlō, posteriōre parte domūs Rōmānae, expositō, nunc oportet reliquās partīs expōnere. Prīmum erat iānua[1] magna, gravis, ōrnātissima, ad quam noctēs et diēs servī permanēbant ut latrōnēs aut inimīcōs repellerent. Iānuā reserātā[2], hominēs vēstibulum intrābant. Vēstibulō relictō, spectātōrēs in ātrium oppositum veniēbant. Ātrium erat peristȳlō simile, sed peristȳlum erat multō maius quam ātrium. Nōn multae sed quattuor columnae, altae et superbae, tēctum sustinēbant, cuius omnēs partēs ad impluvium spectābant. Quid est impluvium? Facile est expōnere. Impluvium erat spatium magnum et apertum mediō in tēctō, per quod pluviae (i.e. aqua) dē caelō[3] dēscendēbant. Cōnsūetūdō erat pluviās graviōrēs aut lūcem clāriōrem vēlīs[4] exclūdere. Parvus lacus mediō in ātriō in quem pluviae cadēbant[5] compluvium appellābātur. Quod circum compluvium sub tēctō erant centum sellae[6] in quibus amīcī sedēbant quī vēnerant ut dominum salūtārent[7]. Ātrium erat commūne atque pūblicum, peristȳlum prīvātum. Dē tēctō candēlābra magnifica, vestīmenta[8] superba pendēbant[9]. In pavīmentō[10] ātriī alia vestīmenta ex remōtīs terrīs dēlēcta perdūcēbantur. Statuae, tabulae, vāsa recentium flōrum plēna omnibus in partibus addēbantur. Utrāque in parte ātriī opponēbantur alia cubicula, fenestrīs et iānuīs ad compluvium spectantibus. Propinquum ātriō erat magnum conclāve[11] quod bibliothēca[12] appellābātur. In bibliothēcā īnstruēban-

tur scrīnia[13] alta multōrum librōrum, et Graecōrum et Latīnōrum, plēna. Inter ātrium et peristȳlum erat tablīnum, ubi Pānsa pater tabulās prīvātās et pecūniam tenēbat.

HELPS

[1] *door*, cf. *janitor* [2] *unlocked* [3] *sky* [4] *by curtains* [5] *fell* [6] *chairs* [7] **salūtāre,** *to greet* [8] *tapestries* [9] *hung* [10] *floor* [11] *a room that may be locked up* [12] *library* [13] *shelves*

*Trōs Tyriusque mihi nūllō discrīmine agētur**— *Trojan and Tyrian will be treated by me without distinction.*
— VIRGIL

LESSON XLVI

ABLATIVES OF MEANS, CAUSE, AND MANNER

282. The Ablative of Means. As we have very frequently met with this construction in our reading of Latin, we shall find nothing unfamiliar in the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *Prodicus carried supplies to Thebes in (i.e. by means of) a cart.*
Prodicus rem frūmentāriam Thēbās carrō portābat.

(2) *The house of Pansa was surrounded by shops.*
Domus Pānsae tabernīs circumdata est.

So we may say: *The ablative without a preposition is used to express the means or instrument of an action.*

283. The Ablative of Cause. This construction has also been touched upon, though it is far less common than the ablative of means. Note the following sentences:

(1) *The sailor was sick with anxiety.*
Nauta cūrā erat aeger.

(2) *The soldier was aroused by the desire for praise.*
Mīles cupiditāte laudis permōtus est.

Note that the ablatives in the above sentences are used without prepositions and answer the question *why?* To summarize:

* The motto of Cornell University.

The ablative without a preposition is used to express the cause of an action or feeling.

Instead of the ablative of cause, however, we frequently meet with the accusative governed by the preposition **ob** or **propter**, as in the following sentences:

(1) *On account of the scarcity of grain, we yielded.*
Ob inopiam frūmentī nōs* submīsimus.

(2) *Because of cowardice he was conquered.*
Propter timōrem victus est.

284. The Ablative of Manner. This construction was also touched upon in Lesson IX as will be recalled by observation of the following sentences, whose ablatives answer the question *how?*

(1) *He sailed with care.*
Cum dīligentiā nāvigāvit.

(2) *They marched with the greatest speed.*
Maximā celeritāte iter fēcērunt.

To summarize: *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition* **cum,** *but* **cum** *is usually omitted when the ablative has a modifying adjective.*

285. Formation of Nouns from Adjectives. In 270 we noted how both in English and in Latin nouns which are the names of actions are derived from verbs by the use of suffixes. Similarly, in both languages, nouns which are the names of qualities are derived from adjectives or other nouns by the use of certain other suffixes. In English, for example, we find *friend, friendship; swift, swiftness; free, freedom; slave, slavery.*

*Accusative case.

In Latin the most important suffixes denoting quality which are added to adjective and noun stems are **ia, itia, tās, tūs, tūdō**. Note the following table, showing the derivation of several nouns with these suffixes which we have already met:

ADJECTIVE OR NOUN	MEANING	SUFFIX DENOTING QUALITY	DERIVED NOUN	MEANING
amīcus	*friend(ly)*	**itia**	**amīcitia**	*friendship*
dīligēns	*careful*	**ia**	**dīligentia**	*carefulness*
līber	*free*	**tās**	**lībertās**	*freedom*
servus	*slave*	**tūs**	**servitūs**	*slavery*
multus	*many* (pl.)	**tūdō**	**multitūdō**	*large number, multitude*

286. Written Work.

A. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all participles of **pellere**, *to drive*, and **docēre**, *to teach*.

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive as follows:

(1) **coepī**, *I began*, 3rd plural active (perfect tenses only).

(2) **permanēre**, *to remain*, 2nd singular active.

(3) **exclūdere**, *to shut out*, 3rd singular passive.

C. Make a derivation table for **vincere**, *to conquer*. Use Latin prefixes **con** and **ē**, and in English the negative **in** (*not*). Use in English sentences at least four derivatives without prefixes, two each with **con** and **ē**, and one with **in**.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. On account of the fear of robbers, slaves were put in charge of the door.

2. We shall explain the plan and arrangement of a Roman house with the greatest care, in order that you may all understand.

3. Have you begun to realize how (**quam**) different a Roman house was from your house?

4. Houses were built (made) by the hands of many slaves working with great speed.

5. The light of day was not always welcome to the Romans; therefore they used to shut it out.

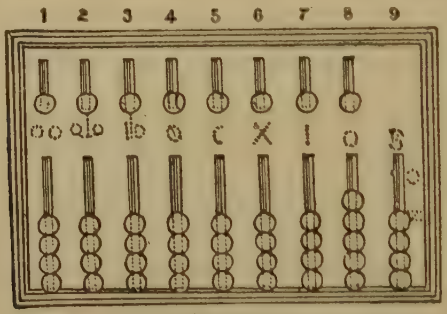
287. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput quīntum decimum

Vīta Urbāna

Negōtia hiemī idōnea cōnsuētūdinibus aestātis grātiōribus iam succēdēbant. Lūdīs rūsticīs[1] dēpositīs, parvus dominus labōrēs scholae certōs cotīdiē sūmere coepit. Duo puerī, dominus et servus, domō ante lūcem magnā difficultāte discēdēbant ut ad lūdum prīmā lūce pervenīrent. Pūblicae scholae Rōmae nōn erant; necesse erat scholās prīvātās habēre. Magister lūdī erat Graecus perītissimus scientiae omnium rērum quī ipse in condiciōne servitūtis fuerat. Per pecūniās quās ā discipulīs accēperat, lībertātem suam coēmerat. Parvus dominus beneficiō singulārī patrī persuāserat ut servus quoque ad lūdum dūcerētur. Itaque Prodicus potuit ratiōnem studiōrum[2] idōneam suscipere. Magister eius lūdī grammaticus appellātus est quod linguam Graecam et poētās Graecōs

discipulōs docēbat. Prodicus reliquīs minimā difficultāte antecēdēbat, sed parvus quoque Lūcius erat mente ācerrimā atque sē perītissimum ōrātiōnum Latīnārum ostendēbat. Prope hunc lūdum erat lūdus īnferiōris ōrdinis, in quō magister minōrēs discipulōs docēbat quō modō linguam Latīnam legerent et scrīberent. Omnēs ūnō tempore maximā vōce recitābant. Eīs discipulīs magister erat



ABACUS
An ancient adding machine.

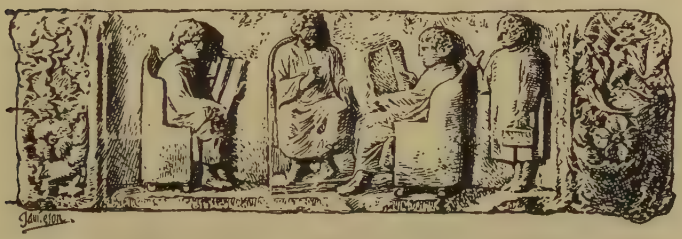
saepe crūdēlissimus sī vōcālēs[3] longās male ēnūntiābant[4]. Numerōs quoque magister māchinā quam abacum appellābat docēbat. Cum paedagōgō, servō aetāte cōnfectō, quī duōs puerōs per urbem dūcēbat, Lūcius et Prodicus prope hunc lūdum minōrem paene cotīdiē ambulābant atque magnōs sonitūs recitātiōnum et poenārum saepe audiēbant. Quam ācriter puerī eum plāgōsum[5] magistrum ōderant!

HELPS

[1] adj. from **rūs** [2] *course of study* [3] *vowels* [4] *pronounced* [5] *flogging*

288. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters* 12–15 *of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Rūre relictō, quō erat necesse discēdere ubi hiems appropinquāvit?
2. Quō modō familia Pānsae iter fēcit?
3. Quō cōnsiliō properābant omnēs?
4. Quō tempore domō discēdēbant duo puerī? Quō cōnsiliō?
5. Quid docēbat magister lūdī īnferiōris?



A Roman School in What Is Today Alsace

Carthāgo . . . dīves opum studiīsque asperrima belli – *Carthage . . . rich in resources and most stern in the pursuits of war.*
— VIRGIL

LESSON XLVII

ABLATIVES OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE AND SPECIFICATION — NUMERALS CONTINUED

289. The Ablative of Degree of Difference. This construction, adverbial in force and answering the question *by how much?* may be studied in the following sentences:

(1) *This bridge is ten feet longer than that.*
Hic pōns est decem pedibus longior quam ille.

(2) *That girl is much larger than her brother.*
Ea puella est multō maior quam frāter.

Note that **multō**, hitherto treated as an adverb, is really an ablative form denoting degree of difference.

To summarize: *The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to express the degree of difference, answering the question* BY HOW MUCH?

290. The Ablative of Specification. This construction, answering the question *in what respect?* may be illustrated by the following sentences:

(1) *Prodicus surpassed the other pupils in diligence.*
Prodicus reliquōs discipulōs dīligentiā superābat.

(2) *He is swifter of foot.*
Est pedibus celerior.

To summarize: *The ablative without a preposition is used to express in what respect something is true.*

291. Numerals from "one" to "twenty."

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
one, two, three, etc.	first, second, third, etc.
1. **ūnus, -a, -um**	I. **prīmus, -a, -um**
2. **duo, duae, duo**	II. **secundus, -a, -um**
3. **trēs, tria**	III. **tertius, -a, -um**
4. **quattuor**	IV. **quārtus, -a, -um**
5. **quīnque**	V. **quīntus, -a, -um**
6. **sex**	VI. **sextus, -a, -um**
7. **septem**	VII. **septimus, -a, -um**
8. **octō**	VIII. **octāvus, -a, -um**
9. **novem**	IX. **nōnus, -a, -um**
10. **decem**	X. **decimus, -a, -um**
11. **ūndecim**	XI. **ūndecimus, -a, -um**
12. **duodecim**	XII. **duodecimus, -a, -um**
13. **tredecim**	XIII. **tertius decimus**
14. **quattuordecim**	XIV. **quārtus decimus**
15. **quīndecim**	XV. **quīntus decimus**
16. **sēdecim**	XVI. **sextus decimus**
17. **septendecim**	XVII. **septimus decimus**
18. **duodēvīgintī**	XVIII. **duodēvīcēnsimus**
19. **ūndēvīgintī**	XIX. **ūndēvīcēnsimus**
20. **vīgintī**	XX. **vīcēnsimus**

292. Progressive Declension. It is possible to test our knowledge of ten Latin nouns by writing but one declension. Take, for example, the five nouns (1) **scientia,** (2) **magister,** (3) **difficultās,** (4) **adventus,** (5) **rēs.** Write the

first in the nominative singular, the second in the genitive singular, the third in the dative singular, and so on, thus:

Nom. **scientia**
Gen. **magistrī**
Dat. **difficultātī**
Acc. **adventum**
Abl. **rē**

We may add to these five other nouns and write each one in a different case in the plural. Such a declension is called a progressive declension.

293. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings, a progressive declension of (1) **fidēs,** (2) **magnitūdō,** (3) **exercitus,** (4) **vulnus,** (5) **cōnsuētūdō,** (6) **cornū,** (7) **turris,** (8) **vīs,** (9) **mare,** (10) **captīvus.**

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses as follows:

(1) **sūmere,** *to take,* 3rd singular indicative active.

(2) **trādere,** *to give up,* 3rd plural indicative passive.

(3) **ōdī,** *I hate,* 3rd plural subjunctive active (perf. tenses only).

(4) **vulnerāre,** *to wound,* 1st plural subjunctive passive.

C. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all the participles of **submittere,** *to yield,* and **suscipere,** *to undertake.*

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Lucius had persuaded the teacher to receive his slave into the school with the other pupils.

2. No girls were able to be present, because at Rome boys were considered (*passive of* **habēre**) much better and keener in mind.

3. When their work was finished, master and slave, with the seventeen others, left school and returned home.

4. They often heard the voices of the boys who were much smaller reciting in loud voices, "Eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen, twenty."

5. The same little boys after a few years were themselves pupils of this schoolmaster who excelled the rest in knowledge.

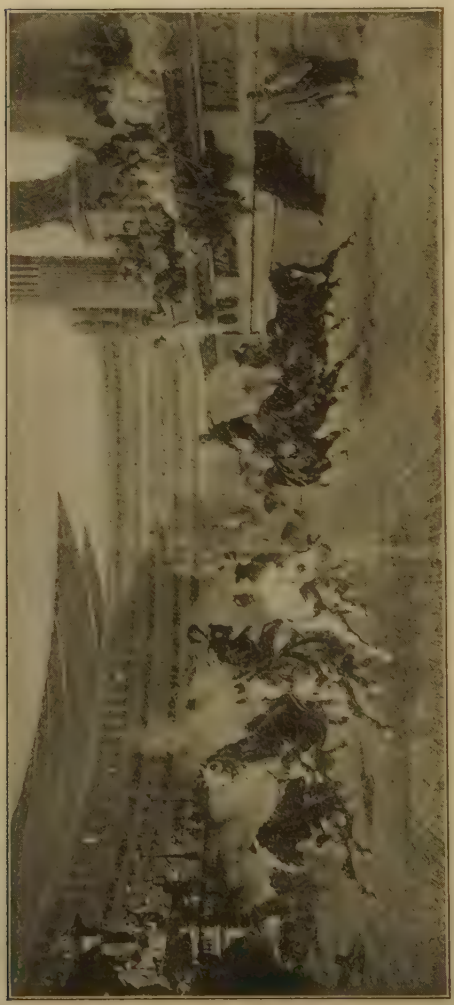
294. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput sextum decimum

Pompa Circēnsis[1]

Ōlim, scholā clausā, puerī cum paedagōgō magnam pompam circēnsem vīdērunt. Dē Capitōliō[2], ubi erat magnum templum trium deōrum maximōrum, haec pompa equestris et pedestris prōcessit. Prīmum vēnit magistrātus in currū, quī purpureās[3] vestēs imperātōris gerēbat. Post eum cohors virōrum nōbilium vestēs albās gerentium prōcessit. Deinde currūs, equōs, aurīgās[4], aliōs vestibus albīs, aliōs vestibus rūfīs vīdērunt. Hī vestēs rūfās gerentēs factiō* russāta, illī albās factiō albāta appellābantur. Dēnique vēnērunt vīgintī sacerdōtēs[5] quī, in parvīs curribus pulchrīs equīs ductī, statuās deōrum portābant. Multae cohortēs mūsicōrum vestibus multicolōribus maximum clāmōrem faciēbant. Itinere longō

*Factiōnēs, great corporations that promoted the races, rearing horses and hiring drivers, often at extravagant wages.



A Roman Chariot Race

factō, pompa magnifica per portam pompae Circī Maximī intrāvit. Iam duo puerī magnum spectāculum vīdērunt. Ab aurīgīs vestēs rūfās aut albās gerentibus equī concitātī maximā celeritāte impulsī sunt. Perītissimī erant aurīgae, sed multum rīdēbant Rōmānī sī aurīga minus perītus dē currū dēiectus erat. Erant sēdecim contentiōnēs[6] curruum equīs aut quattuor aut tribus aut duōbus ductōrum. Utrīque factiōnī, aut albātae aut russātae, multitūdō clāmātōrum[7] nōn dēerat. Altera rīdēbat, alterā victā. Spēs atque timor utramque factiōnem movēbant. Dēnique victōrēs maximīs cum laudibus per portam triumphālem currūs dūcēbant. Erat fīnis diēī mīrābilis[8].

HELPS

[1] *circus parade* [2] *Capitoline Hill* [3] *scarlet* [4] *charioteers*
[5] *priests* [6] *contests* [7] *supporters* [8] *wonderful*

Errāre hūmānum est — To err is human.
— SENECA

LESSON XLVIII

INFINITIVES — FORMATION AND USE AS SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT

295. Formation of Infinitives. With the present active infinitive we have long been familiar. It remains for us to observe the formation of the other infinitives of verbs of all conjugations, including the irregular verb **esse**.

INFINITIVES — FIRST CONJUGATION

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	**vocāre,** *to call*	**vocārī,** *to be called*
Perfect	**vocāvisse,** *to have called*	**vocātus esse,** *to have been called*
Future	**vocātūrus esse,** *to be going to call*	**vocātum īrī,** *to be going to be called*

OTHER CONJUGATIONS

ACTIVE

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
monēre	**monuisse**	**monitūrus esse**
dūcere	**dūxisse**	**ductūrus esse**
capere	**cēpisse**	**captūrus esse**
audīre	**audīvisse**	**audītūrus esse**
esse	**fuisse**	**futūrus esse**

PASSIVE

PRESENT	PERFECT		FUTURE	
monērī	monitus	esse	monitum	īrī
dūcī	ductus		ductum	
capī	captus		captum	
audīrī	audītus		audītum	

Note

(1) that the present passive infinitive differs from the present active only in the occurrence of final ī instead of ĕ. In the third conjugation, however, the ī takes the place of the entire ending ere.

(2) that the perfect active infinitive is formed by adding isse to the perfect stem, found in the third principal part.

(3) that the perfect passive and future active infinitives are compound forms consisting of the corresponding participle and esse.

(4) that the future passive infinitive, which is of very rare occurrence, is a compound form consisting of a form identical with the neuter of the perfect passive participle and īrī.

296. The Infinitive as Subject and Complement. Participles in Latin are always adjectival in force and as such may never be used as nouns, whether subject or complement. Infinitives, however, are verbal nouns and as such may be used both as subject and as complement.*

* Cf. particularly the English present participle, used as an adjective: *He beheld with* SEEING *eyes;* and the English gerund (or infinitive in *ing*), used as a noun: SEEING *is* BELIEVING.

Note the following English sentences and their Latin equivalents:

(1) *Reading Latin is easier than writing it.*
Latīnē legere est facilius quam scrībere.

(2) *Seeing is believing.*
Vidēre est crēdere.

Observe that in sentence (2), while **vidēre** is subject, **crēdere** is a predicate noun, otherwise known as subjective complement.

The infinitive in both English and Latin is frequently used to complete the meaning of verbs otherwise incomplete in meaning, as:

(1) *We desire to take a trip to Europe.*
Iter ad Eurōpam facere cupimus.

(2) *He began to climb up the tower.*
Turrim ascendere coepit.

(3) *Caesar did not hesitate to seize control of the republic.*
Imperium reī pūblicae Caesar occupāre nōn dubitāvit.

(4) *Caesar was able to drive Pompey from Rome.*
Caesar poterat Pompēium Rōmā expellere.

(5) *No general can be ignorant of military science.*
Rem mīlitārem imperātor nōn potest ignorāre.

Such infinitives are known as Complementary Infinitives.

297. Progressive Synopses. The meaning of progressive declension has been explained in **292**. Similarly we may write a progressive synopsis including ten verbs, one in each of the six indicative tenses and one in each of the

four subjunctive tenses. Thus, using the model verbs in their order, we should write in the indicative, 3rd plural active.

Pres. **vocant,** Imperf. **monēbant,** Fut. **dūcent,** etc.

298. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, progressive synopses in indicative and subjunctive as follows:

(1) In third plural active, **accipere, spērāre, interficere, gerere, perterrēre, dēpōnere, exclūdere, invenīre, circumdare, incendere.**

(2) In third singular passive, the same ten verbs in the reverse order.

B. Write, with names of tenses and meanings:

(1) All the infinitives of **dare,** *to give,* **iubēre,** *to order,* **cognōscere,** *to learn,* and **sentīre,** *to realize.*

(2) All the participles of **expōnere,** *to describe,* and **praeficere,** *to put in charge.*

C. Write, with meanings, a progressive declension of the first ten nouns given in Special Vocabulary IX, **360.**

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The two boys, taken (led) by the slave, were able to see the well-known general and the soldiers, some on horses and others on foot.

2. They did not hesitate to look at all the chariots drawn by four horses.

3. At last we begin to realize why they desired to be called Romans.

4. The Romans are said to have been masters once of almost all nations.

5. We are often compelled to remain in school and to be taught after the regular (fixed) hour because we have not been able to finish all our work.

299. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput septimum decimum

Colloquium Inter Parvum Dominum et Prodicum

Prodicus: Vērō, bone domine, tū reliquīs puerīs es dissimillimus. Hodiē cum patre spectācula gladiātōria[1] in amphitheātrō[2] vidēre non cupīvistī.

Dominus: Ego sēmi-Graecus[3] sum. Fēmina Graeca erat māter. Tālia spectācula ōdī. Prīmum gladiātōrēs, servī miserrimī, suam mortem praedīcunt, cum, appropinquantēs imperātōrī, clāmant: "Nōs moritūrī[4] tē salūtāmus." Deinde inter sē aut cum animālibus ferīs[5] pugnant. Multī interficiuntur. Tandem miserrima corpora mortuōrum ex amphitheātrō mūlīs trahuntur. Ob tālia spectācula Rōmānī possunt rīdēre; ego nōn possum. Ōlim fuit maximum spectāculum quod cum patre vidēre temptāvī. Mediō in amphitheātrō turris magnā altitūdine īnstrūcta erat, ubi centum gladiātōrēs ab aliīs ducentīs obsessī sunt. Ācriter trēs hōrās pugnātum est. Tandem obsidentēs turrim* occupāre potuērunt; obsessī omnēs gladiīs interfectī sunt. Diūtius permanēre nōn potuī. Aliud tāle spectāculum vidēre numquam cupīvī.

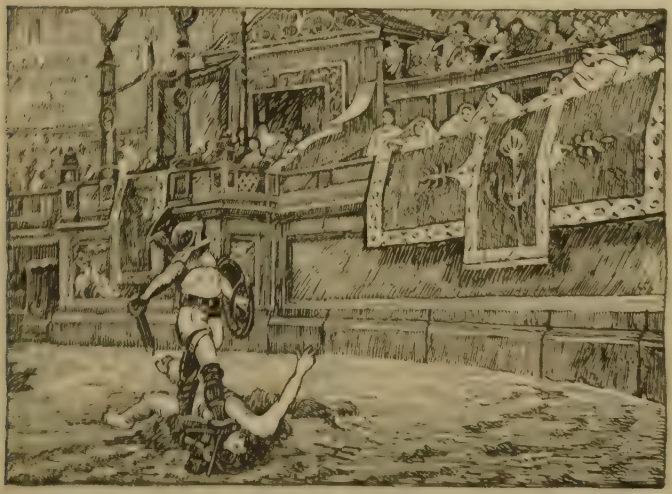
Prodicus: Rem mīlitārem, proelia, vulnera ego quoque ōdī. Dē rēbus grātiōribus melius est ōrātiōnem habēre.°

*Note the exceptional accusative singular.

°This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

Cupisne mihi expōnere paucīs verbīs cūr Rōmānī tribus nōminibus appellentur?

Dominus: Hoc expōnere est facile. Ego et pater eōdem nōmine appellāmur — Lūcius Cornēlius Pānsa. Nostrum



After A. Gérôme

Spectaculum Gladiatorium

The victor looks toward the emperor's box for the signal that will decide the fate of the victim. The Roman ladies to the right are making every effort to influence the emperor's decision against the conquered gladiator by turning down their thumbs.

praenōmen (i.e. prīmum nōmen) Lūcius nōbīs ā patre et mātre datur. Nōmen secundum, Cornēlius, quod nōmen ipsum appellātur, est nōmen commūne omnium hominum nostrae gentis[6], ūnīus ē gentibus veterrimīs[7] et clarissimīs reī pūblicae. Ultimum[8] nōmen, Pānsa, quod

cognōmen appellāmus, est proprium[9] nostrae familiae, quae est familia nōbilissima ōrdinis equestris.

PRODICUS: Tuus autem pater in circō, theātro, amphitheātrō cum equitibus nōn sedet.

DOMINUS: Nōn vērō; pater est ūnus ē vīgintī quaestōribus[10]. Postquam Rōmānus quaestor dēlēctus est, dīcitur esse ex ōrdine senātōriō, atque cum senātōribus sedet.

PRODICUS: Bene sciō. Sunt trēs ōrdinēs in rē pūblicā Rōmānā — senātus, equitēs, populus.

HELPS

[1] *gladiatorial shows* [2] *amphitheater* [3] *half Greek* [4] See 275 (3) [5] *wild* [6] **gēns, gentis,** *tribe, clan* [7] *oldest* [8] *last* [9] *peculiar* [10] *quaestors,* i.e. *treasurers*

Homō sum: hūmānī nihil ā mē (esse) alienum putō — I am a man and think nothing human is without interest to me.
— TERENCE

LESSON XLIX

INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

300. Indirect Discourse. The study of the following sentences will sufficiently illustrate what is meant by the term Indirect Discourse:

DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
Caesar wrote, "I came, I saw, I conquered."	*Caesar wrote that he had come, seen, and conquered.*

The exact words used by Caesar in his famous message to the Roman senate — *direct* discourse — are found on the left, while on the right we have an indirect quotation with the same meaning — *indirect* discourse.

301. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. Direct quotations were rarely made by Roman writers, who usually preferred to make a quotation indirectly. In such indirect quotations — indirect discourse — the Romans used the infinitive with a subject accusative to make a statement, as in the following sentences:

(1) *Caesar says that he* { *is conquering.* / *conquered or has conquered.* / *will conquer.*

Caesar dīcit sē { **vincere.** / **vīcisse.** / **victūrum esse.**

(2) *Caesar said that he* { *was conquering.* / *conquered or had conquered.* / *would conquer.*

Caesar dīxit sē { **vincere.** / **vīcisse.** / **victūrum esse.**

Note

(1) that we might substitute for **dīcit** and **dīxit** the corresponding tenses of **vidēre, audīre, exīstimāre, scrībere, putāre, sentīre,** or any other verb of mental action.

(2) that the tenses of the infinitive express time *present, past,* or *future* at the time of the verb of saying, thinking, writing, etc.

(3) that in the perfect passive and future active infinitives, the participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

(4) that the English translation of the infinitive would be the same after the *future* or *future perfect* tense as after the *present* **dīcit,** while after the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* tense it would be the same as in (2) above.

To summarize: *The infinitive with a subject-accusative is used in indirect discourse to make a statement after verbs of saying, seeing, hearing, knowing, thinking, etc.*

302. Progressive Participles and Infinitives. As we have written progressive synopses, so we may write participles and infinitives progressively — one form of each verb. For the sake of uniformity they should be written in the following order: Participles, (1) present active, (2) future active, (3) perfect passive, (4) future passive;

Infinitives: (5) present active, (6) present passive, (7) perfect active, (8) perfect passive, (9) future active, (10) future passive.

303. Written Work.

A. Write progressively, with meanings, the participles of (1) **obsidēre**, (2) **praedīcere**, (3) **sedēre**, (4) **temptāre**; the infinitives of (5) **dormīre**, (6) **impellere**, (7) **resistere**, (8) **ēripere**, (9) **pervenīre**, (10) **gerere**.

B. Write a progressive declension, in order, with meanings, of the last three nouns in the Ninth Special Vocabulary, 360, and the first seven in the Tenth Special Vocabulary, 364.

C. Write progressive synopses, with meanings of indicatives, as follows:

(1) In 3rd singular active indicative: **antecēdere, intercipere, satisfacere, discēdere, currere, stāre.**

(2) In 3rd plural passive subjunctive: **ostendere, sentīre, vincere, impellere.**

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The Romans thought they were conquering the other nations, had conquered, would conquer.

2. The Romans see that the other nations are being conquered, have been conquered.

3. The two boys hear that some poor slaves have been killed and others are being killed.

4. They say they neither wish nor will wish to see these things.

5. The emperor saw that they were approaching and would soon be fighting with animals or other slaves.

304. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput duodēvīcēnsimum

Triumphus[1]

Ūnus ex imperātōribus Rōmānīs magnam victōriam reportāverat. Quīnque mīlia hostium proeliō magnō interfectī erant. Itaque senātus sēnsit eum imperātōrem triumphum dēportāre dēbēre. Diē ā senātū dictō, omnia templa atque aedificia Forī Rōmānī erant plēna hominum quī optimīs vestibus vēnerant ut magnum spectāculum vidērent. Ubīque erant flōrēs recentēs et ignēs omnibus in ārīs[2] incendēbantur. Lūcius et Prodicus in locō altō sedēbant quī familiīs senātōrum exstrūctus erat.

Musici
Trumpeters and Hornblowers.

Longam hōram spectāculum exspectāverant. Tandem sonitus mūsicōrum audītus est. Maxima pompa Viam Sacram per Forum Rōmānum dēscendēbat. Prīmum vēnērunt magistrātūs cum senātū ambulantēs; deinde mūsicī vēnērunt, post quōs longa pompa sescentōrum carrōrum spolia mīlitāria[3] portantium. Tabulae albae nigrīs litterīs loca bellī nūntiāvērunt. Captī dūcēs hostium gravibus vinculīs vinctī[4] iter crūdēle fēcērunt.

Dēnique exercitus victor signīs mīlitāribus vēnit, cui praeerat imperātor ipse. Vectus[5] currū magnificō,

imperātor dextrā manū rāmum laureum[6], sinistrā scēptrum portābat, temporibus[7] corōnā laureā[8] circumdatīs. Post currum mīlitum equestrium et pedestrium vīdērunt multa mīlia, armīs laureā ōrnātīs. Aliōs "Iō Triumphe" clāmāre, aliōs laudēs deōrum cantāre[9] duo puerī audīvērunt.

Pompa magnifica montem Capitōlīnum ascendit ubi erat templum nōtissimum atque pulcherrimum. Hīc dē currū imperātor dēscendit ut sacra[10] deīs faceret. Posteā in templō fuit convīvium[11] maximum cui intererant amīcī imperātōris quī fīne diēī triumphālis inter sonitūs mūsicōrum atque laudēs cīvium domum ductus est.

HELPS

[1] *triumphal procession* (See colored frontispiece, page 177) [2] *altars* [3] *spoils of war* [4] *bound* [5] *conveyed* [6] *branch of laurel* [7] *temples* [8] *laurel wreath, crown* [9] *sing* [10] *sacrifices* [11] *banquet*

305. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters* 16–18 *of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Nōnne vōs discipulī pompam circēnsem vīdistis?
2. Eratne pompa circēnsis quam vīdistis pompae circēnsī Rōmānae simillima?
3. Cūr Rōmānī in Circō Maximō multum rīdēbant?
4. Quid clāmābant gladiātōrēs pugnātūrī?
5. Quot (*how many*) nōmina Rōmānī habēbant? Quid erat nōmen secundum?

Itaque tantum victus efficere potuit quantum incolumis numquam est ausus optāre — And so although beaten he was able to accomplish what he never dared hope for when undisturbed.

— CICERO

LESSON L

SEMIDEPONENTS AND GENERAL REVIEW

306. Deponent Verbs Defined. A Deponent Verb is one passive in form but active in meaning. Such a verb is **morior, morī, mortuus sum,** *die,* whose future active and perfect participles, **moritūrus** and **mortuus,** have occurred in our reading of Latin. The actual study of these verbs will be postponed until the next lesson.

307. Semideponent Verbs. Two verbs, however, in the vocabulary of first year work, **audēre** and **cōnfīdere,** are known as semideponents, having an active present system and a passive perfect system, both with active meanings. This may be seen from the following synopses:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	**audet,** *he dares*	**audeat**
Imperf.	**audēbat,** *he dared*	**audēret**
Fut.	**audēbit,** *he will dare*	
Perf.	**ausus est,** *he dared*	**ausus sit**
Plup.	**ausus erat,** *he had dared*	**ausus esset**
Fut. Perf.	**ausus erit,** *he will have dared*	

cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum, *trust*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	**cōnfīdit,** *he trusts*	**cōnfīdat**
Imperf.	**cōnfīdēbat,** *he trusted*	**cōnfīderet**
Fut.	**cōnfīdet,** *he will trust*	
Perf.	**cōnfīsus est,** *he trusted*	**cōnfīsus sit**
Plup.	**cōnfīsus erat,** *he had trusted*	**cōnfīsus esset**
Fut. Perf.	**cōnfīsus erit,** *he will have trusted*	

308. Written Work.

A. After reviewing **270** and **285**, make a table showing with regard to each of the following Latin nouns (1) the Latin noun or adjective from which it is derived, (2) the meaning of this adjective or noun given in (1), (3) the Latin suffix, (4) the meaning of this suffix, (5) the consequent meaning of the noun thus formed: **altitūdō, magnitūdō, amīcitia, celeritās, cupiditās, virtūs.**

Make a similar table for the following nouns derived from verbs, substituting "verb" for "adjective" in the column headings: **adventus, imperium, nāvigium, ōdium.**

B. Write a progressive declension of the Latin nouns meaning (1) *fear,* (2) *hope,* (3) *line-of-battle,* (4) *force,* (5) *grain supply,* (6) *praise,* (7) *hand,* (8) *death,* (9) *pace,* (10) *day.*

C. Write progressive synopses, with meanings of the indicative, as follows:

(1) In 2nd singular passive indicative: **trādere, ēripere, excitāre, docēre, incendere, obsidēre.**

(2) In 2nd plural active subjunctive: **dēesse, exstruere, permanēre, expellere.**

CANDELABRUM

D. Write progressive participles and infinitives with meanings of the following: (1) **pervenīre,** (2) **manēre,** (3) **dēligere,** (4) **īnstruere,** (5) **sedēre,** (6) **addere,** (7) **pellere,** (8) **interclūdere,** (9) **persuādēre,** (10) **sentīre.**

E. Write the comparison of the following adjectives and the adverbs formed from them: **perītus, levis, crūdēlis, similis, celer, bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus.**

F. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The two boys knew that the well-known general had won a great victory.

2. This general himself trusted that this victory would be very pleasing to the whole senate.

3. He had written that the enemy had not dared to remain in their own cities and towns.

4. You and I* saw that the temples were full of people and that many soldiers of the enemy were walking before our general's chariot.

5. The Romans could see us, poor captured soldiers, marching through the street with our leaders.

*The first personal pronoun should precede the second and third persons.

309. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput ūndēvīcēnsimum

Cīvis Rōmānus Sum

Lūcius Cornēlius Pānsa fīlius, septendecim annōs nātus, togam virīlem[1] atque cīvitātem sūmpsit. Prīmā lūce Lūcius, nōn iam puer, bullam[2] atque togam praetextam[3], īnsignia puerōrum, dēposuit. Tum tunicam novam et pulchram clāvīs lātīs et purpureīs[4] et togam albam sine praetextā induit[5]. Deinde Lūcius ā patre cum multitūdine servōrum et amīcōrum ad templum deī Līberī[6] in Monte Capitōlīnō ēductus est. Hīc alia sacra in templō perfecta sunt.

Bulla

Dēnique multō diē[7] omnēs domum Pānsae sē recēpērunt, ubi multae mēnsae in hortō peristȳlī exstrūctae erant. Circum omnēs mēnsās erant trēs lectī[8] in quibus hospitēs[9] sē pōnēbant. Quibus in mēnsīs cibus omnium generum positus est. Cibō remōtō, mūsicī et servī, saltātiōnis[10] perītissimī, in peristȳlum inductī sunt.

Posteā Prodicus ā Pānsā patre vocātus est, quī eī praecēpit ut ē poētīs Graecīs partēs grātissimās recitāret. Omnēs hospitēs Prodicum magnā vōce laudāvērunt. Tum Pānsa pater ē lectō altissimō haec verba fēcit: "Consuētūdō est novō cīvī dōnum dare quod eī grātissimum est. Fīlius meus novissimam rem petīvit — lībertātem eius puerī Prodicī. Itaque nunc nūntiō Prodicum lībertum (i.e. servum līberātum) esse. Eī nōmen erit Mārcus Cornēlius Prodicus. Ego nōn eius dominus sed patrōnus[11] sum."

Ubi Prodicus in caput pilleum[22], signum lībertātis, posuit, maximī clāmōrēs per tōtam domum audīti sunt.

HELPS

[1] *of manhood* [2] *locket* (containing a charm to ward off evil) [3] *bordered* (with a narrow red edge) [4] *with wide sacred stripes* [5] *put on* [6] The god **Liber** was also known as **Bacchus** [7] **multā nocte** [8] *couches* [9] *guests* [10] *dancing* [11] *proud* [12] *cap* (worn as sign of freedom)

CIRCUM MENSAM IN TRICLINIO
A Pompeian wall painting.

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī — To die for one's country is sweet and seemly.

— HORACE

LESSON LI

DEPONENT VERBS — ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENTS

310. Conjugation of Deponents. Deponent verbs, passive in form but active in meaning, aside from the participles and infinitives show no difficulties, as will be seen from the following paradigms:

Conj.	
I.	**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum,** *think*
II.	**vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** *fear*
III.	**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum,** *use*
III. (io)	**patior, patī, passus sum,** *allow, suffer*
IV.	**experior, experīrī, expertus sum,** *try*

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres.				
arbitror	vereor	ūtor	patior	experior
arbitrāris	verēris	ūteris	pateris	experīris
arbitrātur	verētur	ūtitur	patitur	experītur
arbitrāmur	verēmur	ūtimur	patimur	experīmur
arbitrāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	experīminī
arbitrantur	verentur	ūtuntur	patiuntur	experiuntur
Imperf.				
arbitrābar, etc.	verēbar, etc.	ūtēbar, etc.	patiēbar, etc.	experiēbar, etc.
Fut.				
arbitrābor,	verēbor,	ūtar,	patiar,	experiar,
arbitrāberis, etc.	verēberis, etc.	ūtēris, etc.	patiēris, etc.	experiēris, etc.

Perf. arbitrātus sum	veritus sum	ūsus sum	passus sum	expertus sum
Plup. arbitrātus eram	veritus eram	ūsus eram	passus eram	expertus eram
Fut. Perf. arbitrātus erō	veritus erō	ūsus erō	passus erō	expertus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Pres. arbitrer	verear	ūtar	patiar	experiar
Imperf. arbitrārer	verērer	ūterer	paterer	experīrer
Perf. arbitrātus sim	veritus sim	ūsus sim	passus sim	expertus sim
Plup. arbitrātus essem	veritus essem	ūsus essem	passus essem	expertus essem

PARTICIPLES

Pres. arbitrāns	verēns	ūtēns	patiēns	experiēns
Fut. arbitrātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	expertūrus
Perf. arbitrātus *having thought*	veritus *having feared*	ūsus *having used*	passus *having suffered*	expertus *having tried*
Ger. arbitrandus *to be thought*	verendus *to be feared*	ūtendus *to be used*	patiendus *to be suffered*	experiendus *to be tried*

INFINITIVES

Pres.				
arbitrārī	verērī	ūtī	patī	experīrī
Perf.				
arbitrātus esse	veritus esse	ūsus esse	passus esse	expertus esse
Fut.				
arbitrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	usūrus esse	passūrus esse	expertūrus esse

Of the above forms only the gerundive (or future passive participle) is translated passively, the perfect participle becoming active in meaning.

Note the following deponents, belonging to the conjugation indicated by the preceding numeral as well as by the present infinitive:

I.	**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum,** *urge*
II.	**tueor, tuērī, tūtus** (or **tuitus**) **sum,** *look at, protect*
III.	**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,** *follow*
III. (io)	**prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum,** *step forward, advance*
IV.	**potior, potīrī, potītus sum,** *get possession of*

311. Ablative with Certain Deponents. Two of the deponents mentioned above govern the ablative translated as a direct object, as:

(1) *We use many Latin words.*
Multīs verbīs Latīnīs ūtimur.

(2) *The general got possession of the hill.*
Imperātor colle potītus est.

The other deponents taking this construction are: **fruor,** *enjoy;* **fungor,** *perform;* and **vēscor,** *eat.* So we may say:

The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vēscor** *govern an ablative translated as direct object.*

312. Written Work.

A. Conjugate, with meanings of indicatives:

(1) **arbitrārī** in future indicative, (2) **verērī** in future perfect indicative, (3) **ūtī** in imperfect subjunctive, (4) **experīrī** in future indicative, (5) **patī** in perfect subjunctive.

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses as follows:

(1) **hortārī,** *to urge,* 2nd singular indicative.

(2) **pollicērī,** *to promise,* 3rd singular subjunctive.

(3) **sequī,** *to follow,* 3rd plural subjunctive.

(4) **potīrī,** *to get possession of,* 2nd plural indicative.

C. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Father and son advanced to the temple, and many slaves and friends followed them.

2. After they had left the hill, Pansa promised his son the gift which he desired most.

3. Lucius looked at the slave whom he loved, and answered that he most desired to secure freedom for Prodicus.

4. Prodicus had experienced a very easy slavery, for his kind master had always protected him.

5. However, slaves always wish to be free, in order to use their own money for themselves.

6. They will no longer fear violence or punishment, and so they think that they will be happier than before.

313. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput vīcēnsimum

Forum Rōmānum

Nōn iam puerī, sed adulēscentēs, Lūcius et Prodicus, cui praenōmen Mārcus datum erat, nunc arbitrātī sunt sē dēbēre rēs pūblicās cognōscere. Itaque erat eōrum cōnsuētūdō ad Forum Rōmānum cotīdiē prōcēdere.

Roman Forum Restored
Showing basilica in background.

Multās hōrās duo amīcī inter statuās hominum veterum et templa et alia aedificia Forī Rōmānī agēbant. Rōmānī antīquī multōs deōs habēbant quibus templa magna aut parva exstrūxerant. Templum deī Saturnī[1] erat aerārium[2] ubi pecūniae pūblicae dēpositae erant. Nōn-nūllīs templīs maximīs senātus Rōmānus ad conventūs ūtēbātur.

In ūnum conventum senātūs Lūcius et Mārcus per Pānsam patrem immissī sunt. Ūnus ē duōbus cōnsulibus conventuī praefuit. Plūrēs senātōrēs ā cōnsule ēvocātī sunt ut sententiās dē rēbus pūblicīs darent. Ōrātiōnibus eōrum adulēscentēs multum frūctī sunt.

Circum Forum erant multae tabernae in quibus argentāriī[3] pecūniās omnium gentium coëmēbant et vēndēbant. Quibus tabernīs clāmōrum plēnīs duo adulēscentēs parum fruēbantur. Erant tria magna aedificia quae basilicae[4] appellābantur. Quibus ē basilicīs ūna ā magnō Iūliō Caesare exstrūcta erat. In eā basilicā praetōrēs ad iūdicia conveniēbant. Erant octō praetōrēs quī inter sē varia genera iūdiciōrum dīvidēbant. Praetor iūdiciō praeerat, sed iūdicēs perītī sententiam dē causīs dabant.

Hīc duo adulēscentēs multās et grātās hōrās agēbant, nam spērābant sē aliquandō[5] ōrātōrēs[6] in iūdiciō futūrōs esse.

HELPS

[1] *Saturn* [2] *treasury* [3] *dealers*, i.e. *brokers* [4] *basilicas* (public office buildings) [5] *at some time* [6] *pleaders*, i.e. *lawyers*

Possunt quia posse videntur. — *They can because they think they can.*

— VIRGIL

LESSON LII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS *ESSE* AND *POSSE* REVIEWED AND COMPLETED — ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

314. *Esse* and *posse* Completed. We are already familiar with the indicative forms of esse and its compound posse (pot+esse). Review the indicative of these verbs on pages 382 and 383. From the table below review the subjunctive of esse, and note the subjunctive of posse and the infinitives and participles of both verbs:

sum, esse, fuī, — **possum, posse, potuī, —**

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	**sim**	**possim**
Imperf.	**essem**	**possem**
Perf.	**fuerim**	**potuerim**
Plup.	**fuissem**	**potuissem**

INFINITIVES

Pres.	**esse**	**posse**
Perf.	**fuisse**	**potuisse**
Fut.	**futūrus esse**	

PARTICIPLES

Fut.	**futūrus**

315. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation. The various forms of the verb **esse** when combined with the future active participle of any verb constitute what is known as the active periphrastic conjugation, which may be seen in the following synopsis:

INDICATIVE

Pres.	vocātūrus	**sum,** *I am about to call*
Imperf.		**eram,** *I was about to call*
Fut.		**erō,** *I shall be about to call*
Perf.		**fuī,** *I was about to call*
Plup.		**fueram,** *I had been about to call*
Fut. Perf.		**fuerō,** *I shall have been about to call*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	**vocātūrus sim**	Perf.	**vocātūrus fuerim**
Imperf.	**vocātūrus essem**	Plup.	**vocātūrus fuissem**

316. Use of the Active Periphrastic. In the indicative mood these forms simply represent the subject as about or going to do, become, or be something. However, in the subjunctive mood, the forms of the active periphrastic are very useful to express a future idea in a mood which has no future tense. Study the following sentences illustrating this use:

(1) *I know why he* { *is going to come, will* **come.** / *was going to come.*

Sciō cūr ventūrus { **sit.** / **fuerit.**

(2) *I know why he* { *was going to come, would come.* / *had been going to come.*

Sciēbam cūr ventūrus { **esset.** / **fuisset.**

317. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, a progressive synopsis of the following deponent verbs, in the 3rd plural: **experīrī, patī, verērī, prōgredī, tuērī, hortārī; arbitrārī, ūtī, potīrī, sequī.**

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, a synopsis in the active periphrastic, 2nd singular, of **immittere**, *to let in*

C. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all the infinitives and participles of (1) **cognōscere**, *to learn*, and (2) **sequī**, *to follow.*

D. Decline (1) the singular of **vetus homō**, *a man of former times*, (2) the plural of **nōnnūllī conventūs**, *some meetings.*

E. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The young men did not dare to come alone into the meetings of the Roman senate.

2. Having, however, been admitted once through the kindness of Pansa they enjoyed greatly the speeches of the consuls and other well-known Romans.

3. There were two consuls; one resisted the other if he was about to injure the state.

4. The new citizens were going to learn everything about public matters.

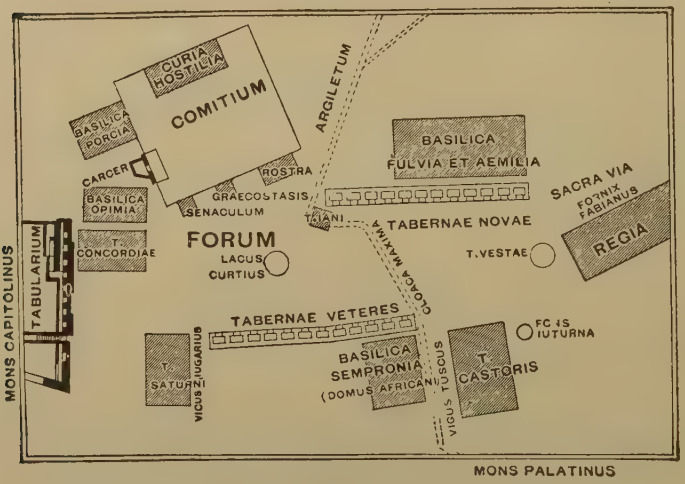
5. They did not know what measures (**cōnsilium**) the consuls would use to protect the state.

318. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput vīcēnsimum prīmum

Rōstra[1] Rōmāna

In ūnō angulō Forī Rōmānī erat exstrūctus locus magnus et altus quī maximam partem Forī dēspiciēbat. Is locus rōstra appellābātur quod rōstrīs[2] nāvium



Plan of Forum under Republic

Showing the Sacra Via and Argiletum, street of the bookshops. See also page 295.

captārum ōrnātus erat. Hīc magistrātūs ad populum Rōmānum ōrātiōnēs habēbant°. Illīs temporibus nōn erant modī, ut hodiē, quibus populus sciēbat quae magi-

°This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

strātūs factūrī essent aut fēcissent. Itaque cōnsuētūdō erat cōnsulēs et praetōrēs rōstra ascendere ut populō nūntiārent quae dīcere cuperent. Ōlim duo adulēscentēs, Lūcius et Mārcus, iūdiciīs dīmissīs, magnam multitūdinem cīvium circum rōstra vīdērunt. Aliī in templīs atque basilicīs, aliī in forō stābant. Ōrātor[3] fuit ūnus ē duōbus cōnsulibus, quī ōrātiōne longā populō nūntiābat magnam coniūrātiōnem[4] in rem pūblicam repertam esse. Dīxit malōs cīvēs imperium dēlēre[5] cōnātūrōs esse. Coniūrātiōne repertā, aliī ex urbe discesserant, sed aliī in urbe manēbant. Itaque omnibus bonīs cīvibus imperāvit ut vigilārent[6] atque domōs suās tuērentur. Cōnsul autem pollicitus est sē vigilantem[6] futūrum esse nē malī cīvēs imperiō reī pūblicae potīrī possent. Bene sciēbat quae eī malī cīves cōnātūrī essent. Itaque pollicitus est eōs omnēs maximās poenās datūrōs esse°. Eōrum cōnsilium fuerat magnam partem urbis incendere, templa dēlēre, caedem[7] optimōrum cīvium facere. Cōnsul cōnfīrmāvit sē omnia ea cōnsilia prohibitūrum esse. Eīs rēbus audītīs, populus magnīs clāmōribus cōnsulem laudāvit[8] et omnēs ad domōs suās discessērunt.

HELPS

[1] **rōstra, rōstrōrum,** *rostrum* (platform for public speaking) [2] *with beaks* [3] *speaker* [4] *conspiracy* [5] *to destroy* [6] from **vigilāre,** *to be watchful* [7] *massacre* [8] *praised*

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

Ferē libenter hominēs quod volunt crēdunt — *As a rule men eagerly believe what they wish.*

— CAESAR

LESSON LIII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO, NOLO, MALO*

319. *Volō* and Its Compounds. From the irregular verb **volō**, *I wish*, were derived **nōlō** (= **nōn** [or **nē**] + **volō**), *I do not wish*, and **mālō** (= **magis**+**volō**), *I prefer*. Study the peculiarities of these verbs in the following paradigms:

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	**volō**	**nōlō**	**mālō**
	vīs	**nōn vīs**	**māvīs**
	vult	**nōn vult**	**māvult**
	volumus	**nōlumus**	**mālumus**
	vultis	**nōn vultis**	**māvultis**
	volunt	**nōlunt**	**mālunt**
Imperf.	**volēbam**	**nōlēbam**	**mālēbam**
Fut.	**volam, volēs**, etc.	**nōlam, nōlēs**, etc.	**mālam, mālēs**, etc.
Perf.	**voluī**	**nōluī**	**māluī**
Plup.	**volueram**	**nōlueram**	**mālueram**
Fut. Perf.	**voluerō**	**nōluerō**	**māluerō**

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	**velim**	**nōlim**	**mālim**
Imperf.	**vellem**	**nōllem**	**māllem**
Perf.	**voluerim**	**nōluerim**	**māluerim**
Plup.	**voluissem**	**nōluissem**	**māluissem**

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**velle**	**nōlle**	**mālle**
Perf.	**voluisse**	**nōluisse**	**māluisse**

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	**volēns**	**nōlēns**

320. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive, as follows:

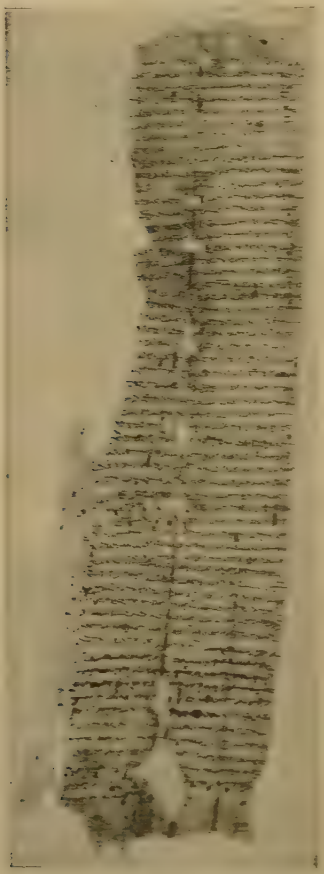
(1) **velle,** *to wish,* 3rd plural.
(2) **nōlle,** *to be unwilling,* 2nd singular.
(3) **mālle,** *to prefer,* 3rd singular.
(4) **posse,** *to be able,* 2nd plural.

B. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all the participles and infinitives of (1) **potīrī,** *to get possession of,* (2) **dēspicere,** *to look down on.*

C. Write, with meanings, a progressive declension in the plural of (1) **sententia,** (2) **magistrātus,** (3) **adulēscēns,** (4) **conventus,** (5) **praetor.**

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The Roman magistrates said that they wished to announce to the people what they were going to do.



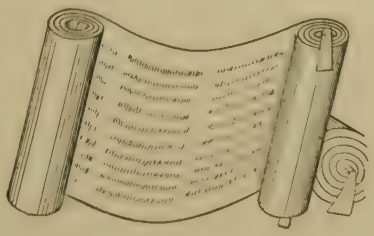
OXYRYNCHUS PAPYRI VI, No. 910
A LEASE OF 197 A.D.

Papyrus (whence our English word *paper*) was made from the pith of the papyrus plant, which was pounded by a mallet into thin, smooth sheets or *schedae*

2. This famous consul does not wish to explain in what manner he was able to discover all these things.

3. He delivers a long speech in order that all the citizens may be able to hear.

4. The same wicked citizens, having got possession of the government, were going to set fire to the city and kill the two consuls.



VOLUMEN

5. The citizens answered that they would attempt to protect their own homes.

321. FĀBULA DĒ PUERŌ GRAECŌ CAPUT VĪCĒNSIMUM SECUNDUM APUD TABERNĀS LIBRŌRUM

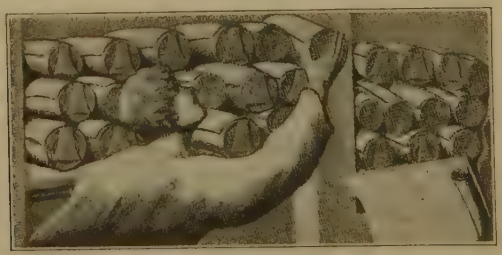
Aliō diē Mārcus Lūciō dīxit sē nōlle ad Forum prōcēdere sed mālle vidēre quō modō Rōmānī librōs facerent. Itaque duo adulēscentēs domō bonā hōrā discessērunt. In viam urbis quae Argilētum appellātur mox pervēnērunt. Quā in viā erant multae tabernae librāriae[1] ē quibus ūnam intrāvērunt. In portā eius tabernae erant longae tabulae quae nōmina librōrum vēndendōrum ostendēbant. Ea taberna in duās partīs dīvīsa erat. Alterā in parte librī vēndēbantur; alterā multī servī quī librāriī appellābantur librōs scrībēbant. Eī servī multās schedās papȳrāceās[2] in longā mēnsā habēbant. Circum mēnsam erant decem aut etiam vīgintī servī. Ad ūnum fīnem mēnsae erat servus perītissimus quī verba ē librō legēbat.

Cēterī verba quae legēbantur celerrimē in schedīs stilō[3] scrībēbant. Postquam schedae īnscrīptae sunt, aliī servī latera[4] eārum colligābant[5] ut possent in volūmen[6] volvī[7]. Ad ūnum fīnem volūminis servī rem ligneam[8] quae umbilīcus appellātur colligābant. Circum umbilīcum volūmen volvēbātur. Fīnēs umbilīcī colōre rūfō, frontēs[9] librī, superiōrēs atque īnferiōrēs, colōre nigrō pictī sunt[10]. Ultimā in schedā titulum[11] colligābant, quī nōmen scrīptōris[12] atque librī dabat. Vīgintī servī multōs librōs paucīs hōrīs poterant facere. Duōs librōs pulchrōs umbilīcīs rūfīs Lūcius magnō pretiō coēmit, quōrum alterum patrī, alterum Mārcō dare voluit.

Scrinium

HELPS

[1] *bookshops* [2] *sheets of paper* [3] **stilus** or **stylus,** *pen* (cf. style) [4] *sides* [5] **ligāre,** *to fasten;* **colligāre,** *to fasten-together* [6] *scroll* [7] from **volvere,** *to roll* [8] adj. from **lignum** [9] *edges* [10] *were painted* [11] *title* [12] *writer, author*



A Roman in His Library
Replacing a volume on a bookshelf.

322. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters 20–22 of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Quō templō Rōmānī ad aerārium ūtēbantur?
2. Quō cōnsiliō Lūcius et Prodicus in senātum immissī sunt?
3. Cūr multās hōrās in basilicā Iūlī Caesaris agēbant?
4. Quō cōnsiliō magna multitūdō ad rōstra convēnerat?
5. Quid cōnsul dē malīs cīvibus pollicitus est?

Poēta nāscitur, nōn fit — Poets are born such; not made.
— HORACE

LESSON LIV

QUOD CAUSAL CLAUSES — THE IRREGULAR VERB *FIO*

323. Clauses with *quod*, Meaning "because." The conjunction **quod**, *because*, always takes the indicative to state the reason as a fact. The following sentences will serve to recall others that have occurred in our reading of Latin:

(1) *Because the one man is just, he returns the other's money.*
Quod alter est aequus, pecūniam alterius reddit.

(2) *Because the rivers hindered them, the six hundred were captured.*
Quod flūmina impediēbant, sescentī captī sunt.

324. The Irregular Verb *fierī*. The verb **fierī**, *to be made, to become, to happen*, is used in the present active system as the passive of **facere**, as may be seen from the following paradigms:

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT INDICATIVE	
faciō, *I make*	**fīō**, *I am made* or *I become*
facis, *you make*	**fīs**, *you are made*
facit, *he makes*	**fit**, *he is made*
facimus, *we make*	
facitis, *you make*	
faciunt, *they make*	**fīunt**, *they are made*

Observe that the **i** is long in **fīō** except in **fit** and before **er.**

Note also the following synopses:

INDICATIVE

Pres.	**facit,** *he makes*	**fit,** *he is made* or *he becomes*
Imperf.	**faciēbat,** *he was making*	**fīēbat,** *he was made*
Fut.	**faciet,** *he will make*	**fīet*,** *he will be made*
Perf.	**fēcit,** *he made*	**factus est,** *he was made*
Plup.	**fēcerat,** *he had made*	**factus erat,** *he had been made*
Fut. Perf.	**fēcerit,** *he will have made*	**factus erit,** *he will have been made*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	**faciat**	**fīat**
Imperf.	**faceret**	**fieret**
Perf.	**fēcerit**	**factus sit**
Plup.	**fēcisset**	**factus esset**

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**faciēns**	
Perf.		**factus**
Fut.	**factūrus**	**faciendus**

INFINITIVES

Pres.	**facere**	**fierī**
Perf.	**fēcisse**	**factus esse**
Fut.	**factūrus esse**	**factum īrī**

* The entire future is: **fiam, fiēs, fiet, fiēmus, fiētis, fient.**

325. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, complete synopses as follows:

(1) **facere,** 3rd plural active.

(2) **fierī,** 2nd singular passive.

B. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all the infinitives of **reperīre,** *to discover;* all the participles of **cōnārī,** *to try.*

C. Decline in Latin the following phrases:

(1) *a more beautiful book.*

(2) *the other part* (of two), singular only.

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Do you wish to hear how books were made by the Romans?

2. One slave used to read aloud, and many other slaves who were sitting around the same table wrote his words.

3. We prefer our books to be made more easily and quickly than by the hands of men.

4. Because these slaves had become very skilful, they could write very many words in a few hours.

5. We do not wish books to be made in this way, because more and better books can now be finished in the same time and sold at a smaller price (*abl.*).

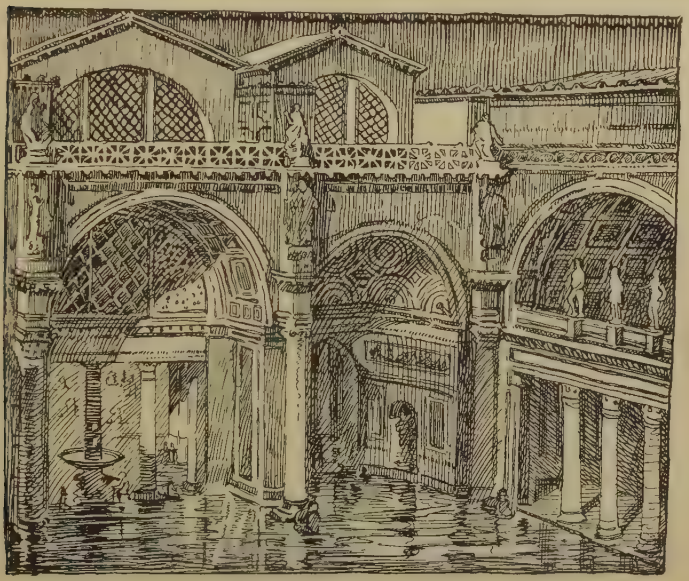
326. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput vīcēnsimum tertium

Thermae[1] Rōmānae

Quod nōn iam puerī sunt sed adulēscentēs fīunt, Lūcius et Mārcus possunt cum aliīs cīvibus thermās pūblicās intrāre. Erant Rōmae paene ducentae thermae pūblicae,

aliae parvae, aliae magnae. Post merīdiem[2] omnēs cīvēs in thermīs pūblicīs trīs hōrās cotīdiē agēbant. Condiciōnēs eārum thermārum erant variae, aliīs factīs magnificīs, aliīs simplicibus.



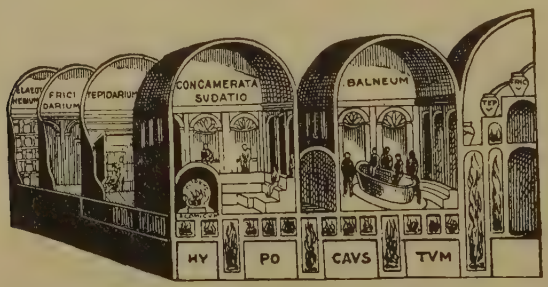
Baths of Caracalla

Quod Pānsa pater erat ōrdinis senātōriae, duo adulēscentēs thermīs optimīs urbis ūtēbantur. Ubi perveniēbant, prīmum palaestram[3] intrābant, ubi lūdīs sē exercēbant[4] ut corpora calida[5] fierent. Nōn numquam, veste dēpositā, cum aliīs adulēscentibus brevīs cursūs currēbant. Nōn numquam pilās[6] magnās et gravīs in

terrā volvēbant, sed saepius pilās parvās et levīs manibus alter ad alterum iaciēbat atque reddēbat. Erat lūdus quī trigōn appellābātur, ubi trēs virī duōbus pilīs ūtēbantur. Cōnsilium erat pilās iacere ad eum quī eās nōn exspectābat. Nōnnumquam duae pilae ad ūnum iaciēbantur; tum duābus manibus eum quī capiēbat ūtī oportēbat. Tandem in palaestrā erat satis magnus lacus ubi natāre poterant. Deinde lūdīs perfectīs thermās intrābant ubi erant multī et perītī servī quī cīvibus aderant. Aquā calidā prīmum, deinde gelidā[7] ūtēbantur. Dēnique in parte thermārum quae lectīs atque librīs amplē ōrnāta erat, omnēs hōram grātam inter sē lectiōnibus[8] aut colloquiīs[9] agēbant. Hōrā nōnā[10] omnēs domum ad cēnam[11] sē recipiēbant.

HELPS

[1] *baths* [2] **merīdiēs = medius + diēs** [3] *gymnasium* (outdoors) [4] *exercised* [5] *hot* [6] *balls* [7] *cold* [8] *reading* [9] *conversation* [10] *ninth hour*, i.e. 3 P.M. [11] *dinner*



MODEL SHOWING ARRANGEMENT OF ROMAN BATH

Quōrum pars magna fuī — Events in which I played a great part.

— VIRGIL

LESSON LV

THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO* — GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

327. The Conjugation of *īre*, "to go." Note the principal parts of the irregular verb **īre**, *to go:*

eō, īre, īvī (or **iī**) **itus**

We observe that its present first singular resembles that of a verb of the second conjugation, while the other parts follow the fourth conjugation. Study the following paradigm:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	**eō, īs, it, īmus, ītis, eunt**	**eam**
Imperf.	**ībam, ības, ībat,** etc.	**īrem**
Fut.	**ībo, ībis, ībit, ībimus, ībitis, ībunt**	
Perf.	**iī** (**īvī**), **iistī, iit,** etc.	**ierim** (**īverim**)
Plup.	**ieram** (**īveram**), **ierās,** etc.	**iissem** (**īvissem**)
Fut. Perf.	**ierō** (**īverō**), **ieris, ierit, ierimus, ieritis, ierint**	

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLES
Pres.	**īre**	Pres. **iēns,** gen. **euntis**
Perf.	**īsse** (**īvisse**)	Fut. **itūrus**
Fut.	**itūrus esse**	Gerundive **eundus**

328. Compounds of *īre*. The bracketed forms in the above paradigm are used only in the rather rare occur-

rences of the simple verb. The unbracketed forms are to be preferred when **īre** is compounded with prepositions, as in the following table:

adeō	**-īre, -iī, -itus**	*go to, visit*
exeō		*go out, go forth*
ineō		*enter upon, begin*
intereō		*go among (things)*, i.e. *vanish*
pereō		*go through, perish*
redeō		*go back, return*
subeō		*undergo, suffer*
trānseō		*go across, cross*

The compounds **inīre, subīre, trānsīre,** which have transitive meanings, have passive as well as active forms.

329. The Genitive of the Whole. This genitive, also known as the Partitive Genitive, has sometimes occurred in our reading of Latin, as will be recalled from the study of the following sentences:

(1) *The soldiers captured part of the robbers.*
Mīlitēs partem latrōnum cēpērunt.

(2) *Prodicus walked three miles (three thousands of paces).*
Prodicus tria mīlia passuum ambulāvit.

(3) *They had enough (of) money.*
Satis pecūniae habuērunt.

Observe that the genitives in these sentences denote a *whole* of which a *part* is mentioned. This genitive must always modify a word denoting a part, never a whole. Compare the following sentence:

All of the robbers perished.
Omnēs latrōnes periērunt.

Note, however, the following expressions, in which we find the ablative with **dē** or **ex** instead of the genitive of the whole, with superlatives and cardinal numbers:

The largest of the boys; three of the robbers.
Maximus dē puerīs; trēs ē latrōnibus.

330. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses as follows:

(1) **exīre,** *to go out,* 3rd plural active, indicative and subjunctive.

(2) **trānsīre,** *to cross,* 3rd singular passive, indicative and subjunctive.

(3) **velle,** *to wish,* 2nd plural, subjunctive.

B. Decline in full the present participle of **īre,** *to go.*

C. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all the infinitives (active and passive) of **trānsīre,** *to cross;* all the participles (active and passive) of **subīre,** *to undergo.*

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. All citizens at Rome used to spend a large part of the day in the Forum.

2. These two youths said that they enjoyed the games and races very much.

3. They were not going to return home before three o'clock (i.e. the ninth hour).

4. They said they had seen twenty of their friends that day, going to and returning from the senate.

5. Who of you has enough money and wishes to go many miles across the sea to Rome with me?

THEATRUM ROMANUM

331 FĀBULA DĒ PUERŌ GRAECŌ

CAPUT VĪCĒNSIMUM QUĀRTUM

ADULĒSCENTĒS THEĀTRUM ADEUNT

Pānsa pater iam fuit praetor et magnōs lūdōs pūblicōs ē sūmsuī fūdine facere voluit. Lūciō praecēpit ut comoediam Plaut[ī][2] parāret. Maximō theātrō Marcellī ūtī sūmsuit ubi vīgintī mīlia cīvium sedēre poterant. Lūcius cum Mārcō familiārem perīssimum adiit. Is āctor con-

diciōnem accēpit ut cum suā cohorte āctōrum quī omnēs erant servī comoedīam Plautī ageret. Diē dictō bonā hōrā in theātrō fuit magna multitūdō cīvium. In optimīs locīs quae orchēstra appellābantur senātōrēs sedēbant. Post senātōrēs in multīs ōrdinibus equitēs sedēbant. Populus optima dē reliquīs locīs occupāre contendēbat.

Fuērunt mūsicī perītī quī partīs comoediae grātissimā ratiōne lūdēbant[2]. Āctōrēs vestīs Graecās atque falsōs crīnēs[3] albōs, nigrōs, rūfōs gerēbant. Crīnēs albī senēs[4], nigrī iuvenīs[5], rūfī servōs nūntiābant. Nūllae fēminae erant inter āctōrēs, servīs masculīs[6] omnīs partīs lūdentibus

Comoedia erat fābula dē servō Graecō, cuius dominus multam pecūniam petēbat, ut fēminam amātam in mātrimōnium[7] dūceret. Eam pecūniam servus poterat dolō[8] rīdiculō[9] ē sene avārissimō[10] comparāre. Comoedia erat rīdicula, sed magis rīdiculum erat vidēre quō modō populus altissimīs in locīs theātrī magnīs clāmōribus rīdērent. Tandem omnēs exiērunt, dicentēs spectāculum fuisse optimum.

HELPS

[1] *comedy of Plautus* [2] *played* [3] *hair* [4] from **senex, senis,** *old man* [5] *young men* [6] *male* [7] *marriage* [8] *by a trick* [9] *funny* [10] *very miserly*

Dēlenda est (nōbīs) Carthāgō — We must destroy Carthage.*
— CATO

LESSON LVI

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION — DATIVE OF AGENCY

332. The Gerundive. The future passive participle, as **vocandus,** *to-be-called,* is more frequently called the Gerundive; and, as has already been noted, is declined exactly like adjectives of the first and second declension, and agrees, as do other Latin participles, with some noun or pronoun.

333. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. Just as the future active participle when combined with forms of the verb **esse** constitutes what is known as the Active Periphrastic Conjugation, so the future passive participle, or gerundive, when combined with forms of **esse** constitutes what is known as the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. This expresses *what is to be done, must be done, ought to be done,* as may be seen from the following paradigm:

		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	vocandus	**sum,** *I am to be called, must be called*	vocandus	**sim**
Imperf.	vocandus	**eram,** *I was to be called, had to be called*	vocandus	**essem**
Fut.	vocandus	**erō,** *I shall have to be called*	vocandus	
Perf.	vocandus	**fuī,** *I was to be called, had to be called*	vocandus	**fuerim**
Plup.	vocandus	**fueram,** *I had had to be called*	vocandus	**fuissem**
Fut. Perf.	vocandus	**fuerō,** *I shall have had to be called*	vocandus	

*With this declaration the famous Cato (243-149 B.C.) ended all his speeches in the Roman Senate on whatever topic.

334. The Dative of Agency. With the passive periphrastic conjugation, the agent, or person by whom something must be done, is expressed not by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**, but by the dative. This construction is best translated by the active voice, as may be seen from the study of the following illustrative sentences:

(1) **Mihi hoc dīcendum est,** *This must be said by me,* or better, *I must say this.*

(2) **Itinera exercituī facienda fuērunt,** *Marches had to be made by the army,* or better, *The army had to make marches.*

However, when the verb in the passive periphrastic is already modified by a dative the agent is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**, as:

I had to give this book to him,
Is liber eī ā mē dandus erat.

335. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive as follows:

(1) **reperīre,** *to discover,* in the passive periphrastic, 3rd plural.

(2) **redīre,** *to return,* in the active periphrastic, 3rd plural.

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive of:

(1) **contendere,** *to struggle,* 2nd singular active.

(2) **cōnstituere,** *to decide,* 3rd singular passive.

C. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, all the participles of **facere,** *to make,* and all the infinitives of **dīcere,** *to say.*

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. In Rome a very large theater had been built in order that all the citizens might be able to enjoy good shows.

2. Games had to be provided by the magistrates; those who provided the best games were the most popular (pleasing).

3. Among the actors there were no women nor free men, but slaves only.

4. Those who were neither senators nor knights had to get (seize) the best places that were left.

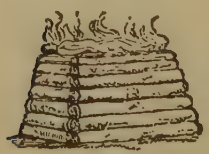
5. This slave was the most skilful of the whole band of actors whom they were going to see that day.

336. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput vicēnsimum quīntum

Fūnus[1] Rōmānum

Avus[2] Lūcī maximae aetātis in vīllā prope Rōmam mortuus erat. Pānsa pater ē senātū statim vocātus erat ut nōmen morientis clāmāret, quae cōnsuētūdō conclāmātiō appellābātur. Oculīs mortuī clausīs, corpus lavātum atque ūnctum[3] ad urbem nocte amīcīs portandum fuit, ubi in ātriō domūs urbānae dēpositum est. Lectus fūnebris[1] flōribus pulchrīs ōrnātus est atque mortuus togam senātōris praetextam gessit, nummō[4] parvō in dentibus[5] positō, quī ā mortuō Charontī[6] dandus erat.



Rogus

Pompa fūnebris fuit amplissima. Prīmum iērunt mūsicī, cantūs trīstīs[7] lūdentēs. Deinde vēnit multitūdō āctōrum quī imāginēs ē cērā[8] factās atque vestīs virōrum mortuōrum familiae Pānsae gerēbant. Ūnus ex āctōribus, gerēns avī mortuī imāginem, eius incessum vōcemque simulāvit[9]. Dēnique secūta est tōta familia Pānsae, hominēs et līberī et servī, quī omnēs multō

CONCLAMATIO

About the dying person gather the intimate relatives, who call out together the name at the moment of death.

gemitū[10] atque magnō dolōre clāmābant. Omnēs togās nigrās gerēbant atque taedās incēnsās etiam diē portābant.

Posteā corpus mortuum in maximum rogum[11] positum est, quī Pānsae patrī ē cōnsuētūdine incendendus fuit. Dēnique cineribus collāpsīs[12] reliquiās vīnō lāvērunt[13] atque in urnā posuērunt, quae in sepulcrō in Viā Appiā locanda fuit.

HELPS

[1] **fūnus,** *funeral:* adj. **fūnebris** [2] *grandfather* [3] *washed and oiled* [4] *coin* [5] *teeth* · [6] *to Charon* (the ferryman over the Styx) [7] *sad songs, dirges* [8] *wax* [9] *imitated gait and voice* [10] *groaning* [11] *funeral pyre* [12] *after the ashes had caved in* [13] *washed the remains in wine*

337. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters 23–25 of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Quā hōrā diēī cīvēs Rōmānī in thermās conveniēbant?
2. Quot (*how many*) hōrās in thermīs agēbant?
3. Quō cōnsiliō Rōmānī in lūdō duōbus pilīs ūtēbantur?
4. Quō cōnsiliō āctōrēs Rōmānī falsōs crīnēs gerēbant?
5. Quid dīxērunt spectātōrēs ē theātrō exeuntēs?

Et propter vītam vivendī perdere causās — And losing all that makes life worth living just to live.

— JUVENAL

LESSON LVII

GERUNDS—SUPINES—PURPOSE EXPRESSIONS

338. Gerunds—Verbal Nouns. We have now to consider certain less usual forms of Latin verbs. First among these may be mentioned the *verbal noun* known as the *Gerund*. As may be seen from the following paradigms, the gerund is in form the same as the neuter singular gerundive, or future passive participle, with the nominative lacking.

Gen. **vocandī,** *of calling,* **monendī, dūcendī, capiendī, audiendī.**

Dat. **vocandō,** *for calling,* **monendō, dūcendō, capiendō, audiendō.**

Acc. **vocandum,** *calling,* **monendum, dūcendum, capiendum, audiendum.**

Abl. **vocandō,** *by calling,* **monendō, dūcendo, capiendō, audiendō.**

339. Comparison of the Gerund and the Gerundive. Note the differences between the gerund and the gerundive as indicated in the following table:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Four cases — no nominative	All cases
Singular only	Singular and plural
Verbal noun — may take an accusative or dative	Must agree like an adjective

340. Uses of the Gerund. Aside from its occurrence in expressions of purpose, which will be discussed later in this lesson, the gerund is found in expressions similar to the following:

Nominative: Lacking and replaced by the infinitive, as:

Reading Latin is easy, **Latīnē legere est facile.**

Genitive:

The art of reading Latin; the practice of speaking, **Ars Latīnē legendī; cōnsuētūdō dīcendī.**

Dative: The Dative is confined to a few phrases.

You were present at the writing; **Scrībendō adfuistī.**

Accusative: Only after prepositions, as in purpose expressions, treated below.

Ablative:

By running; by obeying the laws, **Currendō; lēgibus parendō.**

341. Supines—Forms and Uses. The supines are verbal nouns of the fourth declension formed on the participial stem and found only in the accusative and ablative, as follows:

Acc. **vocātum, monitum, ductum, captum, audītum**
Abl. **vocātū, monitū, ductū, captū, audītū**

The accusative of the supine occurs in expressions of purpose, to be discussed in the next paragraph. Note the following expressions illustrating the use of the ablative of the supine:

Mīrābile dictū, *strange to tell* (literally, *strange in-the-telling,* an ablative of specification); **facile factū,** *easy to do* (literally *in-the-doing*).

342. Expressions of Purpose. Note the following various ways of expressing purpose:

He will send slaves to carry water.

Servōs mittet
- **ut aquam portent, ut** clause of purpose.
- **ad aquam portandam,** accusative of the gerundive* with **ad.**
- **aquam portandī causā,** genitive of the gerund with **causā.**
- **aquae portandae causā,** genitive of the gerundive with **causā.**
- **aquam portātum,** accusative of the supine.

The accusative of the supine may be used to express purpose only after verbs implying motion, as *sending, going, coming.*

343. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings, the declension of the gerund of **manēre,** *to remain,* **impedīre,** *to hinder,* **dēsistere,** *to stop.*

B. Write, with meanings of indicatives, a synopsis in the passive periphrastic, 3rd singular, indicative and subjunctive, of **dēspicere,** *to despise.*

C. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive as follows:

(1) **interīre,** *to perish,* 3rd plural.

(2) **cōnārī,** *to try,* 3rd plural.

*The gerund replaces the gerundive when the verb is intransitive, as *He will send slaves to work,* **Servōs mittet ad labōrandum.**

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Friends went to the country-house to carry to Rome the body of the man who had died.
2. We are all desirous of reading, so that we may learn many things.
3. The master sent the slave to announce his arrival.
4. By using our eyes, we are able to see some things which many others do not see.
5. We wish to go into the fields near the farmhouse for the purpose of working.

344. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput vīcēnsimum sextum

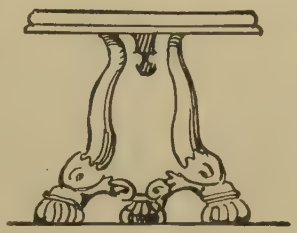
Saturnālia*

Mēnse Decembrī omnēs Rōmānī, līberī et servī, trēs fēstōs diēs[1] quī Saturnālia appellābantur celebrābant[2]. Saturnālia erant diēs laetissimī atque grātissimī totīus annī. Domus urbāna erat plēna amīcōrum et servōrum quōrum multī ē vīllīs Pānsae patris ad Saturnālia celebranda convēnerant. Ut erat cōnsuētūdō eōrum fēstōrum diērum, licēbat servōs in trīclīniō[3] dominī edere. Pānsa pater cum Lūciō et Mārcō, togīs remōtīs, multicolōrēs vestīs servōrum induerat[4]. Omnēs magnopere rīdēbant ubi Pānsa pater, cui erat corpus rotundius[5], trīclīnium

Roman Lamp

*Cf. the Mardi Gras celebration, as observed in New Orleans and elsewhere.

intrābat. Cibum atque vīnum[6] utrāque manū portābat, nam ē cōnsuētūdine hōc tempore laetissimō, omnibus rēbus mūtātīs[7], dominī ipsī prō servīs agēbant. Difficile dictū est quantō cum gaudiō Lūcius et Mārcus partīs servōrum ēgerint. Hoc erat tempus dōna inter sē dandī.° Tabernae ubīque erant plēnae rērum vīsū pulcherrimārum atque eōrum quī eās coëmēbant.



Base for Lamp

In viīs urbis erat multitūdō hominum quī vestem mīrābilem atque imāginēs rīdiculās ē cērā[8] factās gerēbant. Servī et līberī sine discrīmine[9] lībertāte maximā ūtēbantur. Omnibus dē partibus clāmōrēs, "Iō Saturnālia," audiēbantur. Minimus somnus Rōmae hōs diēs et noctēs capī poterat.

HELPS

[1] *holidays* [2] **celebrāre,** *to celebrate* [3] *dining-room* [4] *had put on* [5] *somewhat rotund* [6] *wine* [7] *changed* [8] *wax* [9] *distinction*

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

Parem nōn fert — *He brooks no equal.*
— Motto of Louis XV

LESSON LVIII

THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO* — RESULT CLAUSES

345. Conjugation of *ferre*. The irregular verb ferre, to carry, bear, bring, should now be studied from the following paradigm:

Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	INDICATIVE	
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feror, ferris, fertur, ferimur, feriminī, feruntur
Imperf.	ferēbam	ferēbar
Fut.	feram, ferēs, etc.	ferar, ferēris, etc.
Perf.	tulī	lātus sum
Plup.	tuleram	lātus eram
Fut. Perf.	tulerō	lātus erō
	SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
Imperf.	ferrem	ferrer
Perf.	tulerim	lātus sim
Plup.	tulissem	lātus essem
	PARTICIPLES	
Pres.	ferēns, ferentis	
Perf.		lātus, -a, -um
Fut.	lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

Pres.	**ferre**	**ferrī**
Perf.	**tulisse**	**lātus esse**
Fut.	**lātūrus esse**	**lātum īrī**

Among the many compounds of **ferre**, note the irregularities in the principal parts of the following:

auferō (**ab**+**ferō**), **auferre, abstulī, ablātus,** *carry off.*
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back.*

346. Clauses of Result. We have already studied the use of the subjunctive in purpose clauses and indirect questions. The result of an action, expressed by the indicative in English, also requires the subjunctive in Latin, as may be seen from the study of the following illustrative sentences:

(1) *His wounds are so serious that he is dying.*
Eius vulnera sunt tam gravia ut moriātur.

(2) *The bridge was so narrow that Horatius alone resisted the enemy.*
Pōns erat ita angustus ut Horātius sōlus hostibus resisteret.

(3) *The procession is so long that we cannot see the end of it.*
Pompa est tam longa ut fīnem vidēre nōn possīmus.

So we may say: *The result of an action is expressed by the subjunctive with* **ut** *affirmative,* **ut nōn** *negative.*

347. Written Work.

A. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive as follows:

(1) **ferre,** *to bear,* 3rd plural active.

(2) **ferre,** 3rd singular passive.
(3) **nōlle,** *not to wish,* 3rd singular.
(4) **fierī,** *to become,* 3rd plural.

B. Decline the gerund and the supine of **ferre.**

C. Decline the following Latin phrases:

(1) *three happy days* (plural only).
(2) *the greatest freedom* (singular only).
(3) *a very beautiful thing* (singular and plural).

D. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The end of the year brought the days which all Romans enjoyed greatly.

2. At this time everybody came together from the farmhouses, so that the city was full of people, both freemen and slaves.

3. These days were so different from others that slaves became masters and masters slaves.

4. Many men used to go out into the streets wearing masks, and shouting in such loud (**tantus**) voices that everybody heard and laughed.

5. All the Romans used to buy many beautiful presents to give their friends.

348. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput vīcēnsimum septimum

Diēs Cīvis Rōmānī

Pānsa pater, iam nōbilis cīvis Rōmānus, prīmā lūce surgēbat. Rōmānī diem ā prīmā lūce ad occāsum sōlis[1] in duodecim hōrās dīvidēbant, ut prīma lūx esset prīma hōra diēī. Medius diēs merīdiēs appellābātur, ut

hōra merīdiāna esset sexta hōra. Prīmus cibus diēī ientāculum appellābātur. Ientāculum Pānsae patris erat simplicissimum — pānis[2] cum vīnō atque sale[3], olīvīs et ūvīs passīs[4] nōnnumquam additīs.

Post ientāculum Pānsa pater in tablīnum ībat ut negōtia prīvāta ageret. Hōc factō, in ātrium ībat, quō multī cīvēs patrōnum salūtātum[5] iam convēnerant. Salūtātiōne perfectā, tertiā hōrā ad Forum Rōmānum lectīcā ā servīs ferēbātur ut iūdicium exercēret[6]. Sex līctōrēs[7], fascēs[8] ferentēs, eī praeībant[9]; multī cīvēs, nōmenclātor (servus perītus qui omnia nōmina amīcōrum Pānsae patrī dīcere poterat) eum sequēbantur.

Lictors

Sextā hōrā domum ad prandium redībat. Cibus merīdiānus prandium appellābātur. Post prandium Pānsa pater somnum ūnam hōram capiēbat. Somnō captō, lectīca cum sex līctōribus ad thermās ferēbātur ubi Pānsa pater sē exercēbat, lavābat[10], cum amīcīs loquēbātur.

Cēnam, cibum maximum, quae ē cōnsuētūdine ūndecimā hōrā capiēbātur, Pānsa pater sōlus numquam capiēbat. Semper amīcōs ad cēnam domum addūcēbat, aut domī amīcōrum cēnābat[11]. Multa genera cibī[12] ad cēnam parābantur. Inter cēnam mūsicī lūdēbant et poētae recitābant. Tālis erat fīnis diēī Rōmānī.

HELPS

[1] *sunset* [2] *bread* [3] *salt* [4] *dried grapes* [5] supine of **salūtāre,** *to greet* [6] **iūdicium exercēre,** *to preside over a court* [7] *lictors,* i.e. attendants upon a public official. See illustration, page 236 [8] *fasces,* bundles of rods carried as symbols of power [9] *preceded* [10] **lavāre,** *to bathe* [11] *dined* [12] consisting of eggs, fish, various meats, lettuce, fruits, and nuts

CIVIS ROMANUS

Here we see the toga, the dress worn by all gentlemen in Rome. This was a white woolen garment unsuitable for manual laborers.

Nōlī mē tangere — Don't touch me.
— Motto of South Carolina
Avē, Maria, — Hail, Mary!

LESSON LIX

CARDINAL NUMERALS COMPLETED — COMMANDS

349. Cardinal Numerals Completed. The formation of cardinals above twenty will be seen in the following table:

21.	**vīgintī ūnus** or **ūnus et vīgintī**	101.	**centum ūnus** or **centum et ūnus**
22.	**vīgintī duo** or **duo et vīgintī**	200.	**ducentī, -ae, -a**
28.	**duodētrīgintā**	300.	**trecentī**
29.	**ūndētrīgintā**	400.	**quadringentī**
30.	**trīgintā**	500.	**quīngentī**
40.	**quadrāgintā**	600.	**sescentī**
50.	**quīnquāgintā**	700.	**septingentī**
60.	**sexāgintā**	800.	**octingentī**
70.	**septuāgintā**	900.	**nōngentī**
80.	**octōgintā**	1000.	**mīlle**
90.	**nōnāgintā**	2000.	**duo mīlia**
100.	**centum**	100,000.	**centum mīlia**
		200,000.	**ducenta mīlia**

350. Imperatives. As in English, so in Latin commands are usually expressed by the imperative mood. While the Latin imperative has two tenses, the present and the future, the latter, which occurs for the most part in legal and religious formulas, may be disregarded in our study of the language. Note, however, the formation of present imperatives in the following table:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
es, *be*	**este,** *be*		
vocā, *call*	**vocāte,** *call*	**vocāre,** *be called*	**vocāminī,** *be called*
monē	**monēte**	**monēre**	**monēminī**
dūc*	**dūcite**	**dūcere**	**dūciminī**
cape	**capite**	**capere**	**capiminī**
audī	**audīte**	**audīre**	**audīminī**

351. Exceptions in Expressing Commands. The following exceptions should be noted:

(1) Negative commands are expressed by the imperative of **nōlle,** *to wish not, be unwilling,* with a complementary infinitive, as: *Do not go,* **Nōlī īre** (sing.); **Nōlīte īre** (pl.).

(2) Mild or courteous commands are expressed by the present subjunctive, particularly in the first or third person, as:

Affirmative: *Let us go,* **Eāmus;** *Let them go,* **Eant.**

Negative: *Let us not go,* **Nē eāmus;** *Let them not go,* **Nē eant.**

352. Written Work.

A. Write the Latin cardinal numerals from sixty to seventy inclusive.

B. Write all the present imperatives of **expellere,** *to drive out,* **docēre,** *to teach,* **servāre,** *to save,* **ēripere,** *to rescue,* **sentīre,** *to realize,* **hortārī,** *to urge,* **verērī,** *to fear,* **ūtī,** *to use,* **morī,** *to die,* **orīrī,** *to begin.*

*Three other verbs have in the singular present a monosyllabic imperative— **dīc, fac, fer.** Other 3rd conjugation verbs employ the present stem, as **lege,** *read;* **curre,** *run.*

C. Write, with names and meanings, all the participles and infinitives of **ferre,** *to bear,* and **loquī,** *to speak.*

D. Write, with meanings of indicatives, synopses in indicative and subjunctive, as follows:

(1) **fierī,** *to become,* 3rd plural.
(2) **mālle,** *to prefer,* 2nd plural.
(3) **posse,** *to be able,* 3rd plural.

E. *Translate into Latin:*

1. Let us rise at eight o'clock and go to the Forum at nine.

2. Carry your master to court, slaves, and bring him back home at noon.

3. Try to remember (hold in memory) how the Romans divided the day and named the hours.

4. There are twenty-four hours in one day; twenty-eight, twenty-nine, thirty, or thirty-one days in one month.

5. The Romans, however, divided the night not into hours, but into four parts, so that they did not have twenty-four hours in a day.

353. Fābula dē Puerō Graecō

caput duodētrīcēnsimum

Colloquium Inter Lūcium et Mārcum

Lūcius: Dīc mihi, amīce cāre[1], cūr hodiē sīs trīstis[2]. Multa beneficia Rōmae accēpistī — lībertātem, cīvitātem, amīcitiam meam — sed saepissimē trīstissimus[2] es. Fac mē certiōrem° dē tuīs malīs.

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

MĀRCVS: Ego vērō, amīce cārissime[1], tanta beneficia accēpī ut grātiās[3] maximās tibi dēbeam. Memoria autem meī patris et mātris in Graeciā numquam abest, ut aegrē feram° eōs ā mē ablātōs esse.

LŪCIVS: Cōnābor cōnsilium capere° ut nūntium dē tuō patre et mātre mox accipiās. Proximō annō pater meus erit prōpraetor[4] atque in Graeciam ībit prōvinciam gubernandī[5] causā. Mihi pollicitus est sē mē sēcum ductūrum esse ut ratiōnem studiōrum[6] Athēnīs ingrediar.

MĀRCVS: Cōnsilium tuum, mī amīce, iam providēre possum. Nūntium dē meō patre et mātre referre poteris cum Athēnīs eris.

LŪCIVS: Multō melius cōnsilium cēpī. Meus pater vult tē mēcum Athēnās īre. Athēnae nōn longē absunt Thēbīs. Poterō tibi pollicērī tē domum antīquam reditūrum esse atque cārōs parentēs iterum vidēre.

MĀRCVS: Nimis[7] bonus es, amīce cārissime. Quam fābulam mīrābilem meō patrī et mātrī nārrāre poterō! Quam difficile erit illum diem exspectāre!

LŪCIVS: Hōc diē ipsō Pānsa pater nūntium Athēnās mittit ut domum nōbīs condūcat[8]. Domō conductā, is nūntius poterit litterās[9] ad tuum patrem et mātrem ferre. Fer tabellās atque stilum[10]. Scrībe celeriter quod noster nūntius hāc hōrā ipsā īre parātus est.

HELPS

[1] **cārus, -a, -um,** *dear* [2] **trīstis,** *sad* [3] *thanks* [4] *governor* [5] **gubernāre,** *to govern* [6] *course of study* [7] *too* [8] *rent* [9] *a letter* [10] *tablets and a pen*

° This sign indicates an idiomatic expression, to be found at the end of the Special Vocabulary.

354. Oral Work. *Answer in complete Latin sentences the following questions, based on chapters* 26–28 *of the Fābula dē Puerō Graecō:*

1. Quō cōnsiliō mēnse Decembrī servī rūre Rōmam conveniēbant?
2. Cūr minimus somnus Rōmae fēstōs diēs capī poterat?
3. Quā hōrā surgēbat Pānsa pater?
4. Quō cōnsiliō nōmenclātōrem habēbat?
5. Potestisne expōnere cūr Mārcus Lūcium amāverit?

Scene from a Comedy

Repetītiō est māter studiōrum — Review is the mother of study.
—UNKNOWN AUTHOR

LESSON LX

GENERAL REVIEW OF FORMS — REVIEW OF STATEMENTS, QUESTIONS, AND COMMANDS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

355. Written Work.

A. After reviewing all noun declensions, write in order with meanings progressive declensions of the following ten nouns in the Fourteenth Special Vocabulary, **379**: **aedificium, altitūdō, clāmor, cōnsuētūdō, currus, imāgō, magistrātus, imperium, rēs pūblica, spatium**; and of the ten nouns in the Fifteenth Special Vocabulary, **382**, omitting the first.

B. After reviewing regular verbs of all conjugations, write progressive synopses of the verbs in the Fourteenth Special Vocabulary, **380**, as follows, with meaning of each indicative form (Omit the defective verbs **coepī** and **ōdī**.):

(1) **audēre—expōnere,** 3rd plural subjunctive active.

(2) **prōpōnere—permanēre,** 2nd singular indicative active.

(3) **praedīcere—temptāre,** 3rd singular indicative passive.

(4) **ōrnāre** back to **īnstruere,** 3rd plural subjunctive passive.

C. After reviewing deponent and irregular verbs, in Lessons L–LIX, write progressive synopses, with meaning of each indicative form, of the following verbs in the Fifteenth Special Vocabulary, **383**:

(1) In 2nd singular, indicative and subjunctive: **arbitrārī, experīrī, fierī, fruī, ingredī, loquī; hortārī, morī, patī, pollicērī.**

(2) In 2nd plural active, indicative: **nōlle, posse, īre, abesse, velle, auferre.**

(3) In 2nd plural passive, subjunctive: **subīre, fierī, referre, trānsīre.**

D. Write, with names of tenses and meanings, progressive participles and infinitives as follows:

(1) Of the following transitive verbs in the Fifteenth Special Vocabulary, 383: **cōnstituere, dēspicere, subīre, dīvidere; inīre, ferre, referre, immittere, auferre, reperīre.**

(2) Of the following deponents in the Fifteenth Special Vocabulary, 383: **potīrī, prōgredī, sequī, tuērī; cōnārī, ūtī, verērī.**

E. After reviewing all adjective declensions, write the declension in all genders of the following:

(1) In the singular, **equester, uterque, vetus.**

(2) In the plural, **singulāris,** and the comparative of **cupidus.**

F. After reviewing adjective comparison and adverb formation and comparison (**163, 164, 167, 209,** and **211**), write the comparison of the following adjectives and form and compare adverbs from them, writing the meaning of each form: **angustus, commūnis, familiāris, celer, similis, nōbilis.**

G. *After reviewing the rules in* **251, 256,** *and* **301,** *translate into Latin the following sentences:*

1. We have now learned why Marcus hoped that he should soon see his father and mother again.

2. Do you think that after these years they are still alive?

3. His kind friend Lucius urged him to write a message to his father.

4. He promised that Marcus should go to Greece with him.

5. They commanded the slave to carry the message to Thebes.

6. Marcus wrote that he was free and had received many favors in Rome.

7. He also explained why he had not been able to send a message before.

8. Lucius persuaded him not to be wretched, for he was soon going-to-go-back to his old home.

9. Do you not all realize how happy the poor Greek is?

10. We hope that his mother will be very happy upon the arrival of her son.

356. Practical Latin. On old tombstones, on public buildings, in books, and even in newspapers, one constantly meets with Latin sentences or phrases which every cultivated man or woman should be able to read and understand. Examples of such will be found in the following paragraphs.

357. An Interesting Epitaph. In the churchyard of St. Paul's Chapel close to the rattle and bustle of downtown Broadway, New York City, stands a tall shaft with the following inscription in the language that was once, and may again become, the universal language of civiliza-

tion. This inscription any observing student should now be able to read with little or no assistance from vocabulary or teacher:

IN MEMORIAM
GULIELMI JACOBI MAC NEVIN, M.D., QUI HIBERNIA NATUS DIE MENSIS MARTII XXI A.D. MDCCLXIII E VITA IN HAC URBE DECESSIT DIE MENSIS JULII XII ANNO SALUTIS MDCCCXLI.

358. Pithy Latin Sayings.

Absit ōmen — May the portent be warded off (i.e. knock on wood).

Carmina morte carent — Songs never die (Ovid).

Carpe diem — Enjoy today (Horace).

Corvō quoque rārior albō — Even rarer than a white crow (Juvenal).

Cui bonō?— For whose benefit? (Cicero)

Cum grānō salis — With a grain of salt (Pliny).

Diem perdidī — I have lost a day (The Emperor Titus, unable to recall a good deed).

Faber est quisque suae fortūnae — Each one is architect of his own fortune (Appius).

Facilis dēscēnsus Avernō — The way down to Avernus is easy, i.e. it is easy to go down hill (Virgil).

Festīnā lentē — Hasten slowly (Augustus's Ideal).

Fīnis corōnat opus — The result justifies the effort (Ovid).

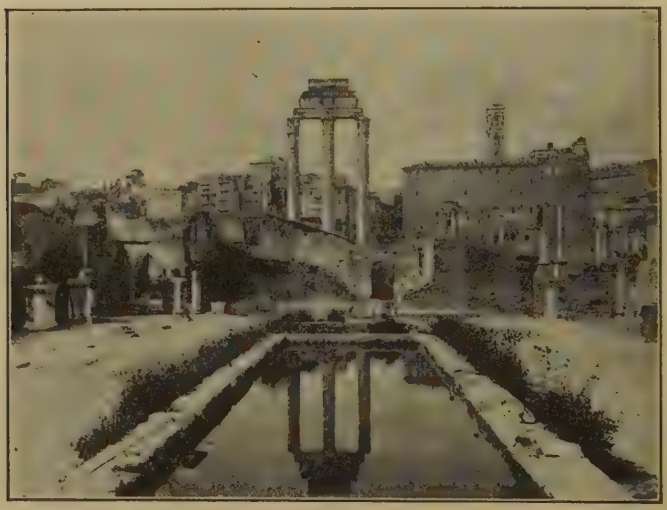
Hīc sunt lacrimae rērum — Here are tears for misfortunes (Virgil).

Littera scrīpta manet — The written word survives (Unknown author).

Nē cēde malīs — Yield not to misfortunes (VIRGIL).

Nōn omnia possumus omnēs — We cannot all do everything (LUCILIUS, a Roman satirist).

Nūlla palma sine pulvere — No victory without effort (HORACE).



FORUM ROMANUM

"Now thy Forum roars no longer,
fallen every purple Caesar's dome."

Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur — Birds of a feather flock together (CICERO).

Quot hominēs tot sententiae — As many opinions as men (TERENCE).

Requiēscat in pāce — May he rest in peace.

Salūs populī suprēma lēx — A nation's safety is its first law (CICERO; MOTTO OF MISSOURI).

Similia similibus cūrantur — Like cures like (Motto of Homeopathy).

Solve mē dēmentiā — Free me from madness (Horace).

Ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem — For the conquered the only escape is to hope for none (Virgil).

Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina — A moody and ever changeable creature is woman (Virgil).

Vīrīs acquīrit eundō — She acquires strength by going on (Virgil).

359. Latin Phrases in Common Use. Now that we have completed our first year of Latin, we shall find ourselves able to translate and explain the following expressions:

Ab urbe conditā (A.U.C.)
Ad referendum
Ad valōrem
Aetātis (Aet.)
Alter ego
Ante merīdiem (A.M.)
Ante mortem
Artium baccalaureus (A.B.)
Artium magister (A.M.)
Bonā fidē
Cāsus bellī
Deō volente (D.V.)
Ē plūribus ūnum
Exit; exeunt
Fīat; fīat lūx
Habeās corpus
Iēsus Hominum Salvātor (I.H.S.)
Iēsus Nazarēnus Rēx Iudaeōrum (I.N.R.I.)
In mediās rēs
In statū quō
Inter nōs
Labor omnia vincit
Lāpsus linguae
Lāpsus memoriae
Mīrābile dictū
Modus operandī
Modus vīvendī
Multum in parvō
Nīl admīrārī
Notā bene (N.B.)

Pax vōbiscum
Per diem
Per sē
Post meridiem (P.M.)
Post mortem
Post scriptum (P.S.)
Primā faciē
Prō bonō publicō
Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (Q.E.D.)
Quod erat faciendum (Q.E.F.)
Rēs gestae
Semper fidēlis
Senātus Populusque Rōmānus (S.P.Q.R.)
Sine diē
Tempus fugit
Tū quoque, Brūte*
Verbātim

*Caesar's last words.

NINTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

New Words Used in Lessons XXXI–XXXII

Words marked with an asterisk constitute a select vocabulary recommended for special study.

360. Nouns.

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*aetās, aetātis, F., *age*	
*carrus, -ī, M., *wagon, cart*	car, chariot
*cīvis, cīvis (cīvi-), M., *citizen*	civic, civil
*cohors, cohortis (cohorti-), F., *cohort, band*	cohort
gaudium, -ī, N., *joy, gladness*	gaudy
*hostis, hostis (hosti-), M., *enemy*	hostile, hostility
*imperātor, imperātōris, M., *commander, general*	imperative, emperor
*mare, maris (mari-), N., *sea*	marine, mariner
*mōns, montis (monti-), M., *mountain, hill*	Montana
*nāvis, nāvis (nāvi-), F., *ship, boat*	naval, navy
*oppidānus, -ī, M., *townsman, inhabitant of a town*	
*pōns, pontis (ponti-), M., *bridge*	pontoon, pontificate
*urbs, urbis (urbi-), F., *city*	urban, urbane, suburbs

361. Verbs.

*capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, capture*	captive, etc.,
*accipiō, *incipiō, *intercipiō } -cipere, *accept, receive, undertake, begin, intercept* -cēpī, -ceptus	
*cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum, *trust*	confide, confident, etc.
*faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do*	fact, etc.
*iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl*	interject, etc.
*dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw down*	

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *read, gather*	legible, legend, lecture
*spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope, hope for*	desperate, etc.
*trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *draw, drag*	traction, detract, subtraction, subtrahend, etc.
vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *sell*	vend, vendor, etc.

362. Adjectives.

crūdēlis, -e, *cruel*	
*difficilis, -e, *hard, difficult*	difficulty, etc.
*facilis, -e, *easy*	facility, faculty
*fortis, -e, *strong, brave*	fortitude
*gravis, -e, *heavy, severe, serious*	grave, gravity
*immortālis, -e, *immortal*	immortality, etc.
*levis, -e, *light* (in weight)	levity
*mortālis, -e, *mortal*	mortality, etc.
*necesse, indeclinable, *necessary*	necessity
*nōbilis, -e, *well-known, famous, noble*	nobility, ignoble, etc.
*omnis, -e, *every*, plu. *all*	omnibus, omnipotent, omnipresent
*pār, paris, *equal*	par, parity
*praesēns, praesentis, *present* (from prae+sum)	presence, etc.
*superbus, -a, -um, *proud, haughty*	superb

363. Adverb.

hodiē, *today*	hodiernal

IDIOM

in mediō monte, *halfway up the mountain*

TENTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

New Words Used in Lessons XXXIII–XXXIV

364. Nouns.	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*causa, -ae, F., *cause, reason*	causal, causation
*finis, fīnis (fīni-), M., *end, limit;* plu. *boundaries, territory*	finish, finite, infinite
lūdus, -ī, M., *game, school*	ludicrous
*mēns, mentis (menti-), F., *mind*	mental, demented
*multitūdō, -tūdinis, F., *great number, multitude, crowd*	multitudinous
*nēmō, dat. nēminī, M. or F., *nobody, no one*	
*pars, partis (parti-), F., *part, side*	partial, participate, etc.
pretium, -ī, N., *price*	precious
*scientia, -ae, F., *knowledge*	science, conscientious, etc.

365. Verbs.	
*antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *go before, excel, surpass*	antecedent
*circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, surround*	circumvent
coëmō, -ēmere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *buy, purchase*	
*cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *wish, desire*	
*currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *run*	current, occur, precursor
*dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *despair, despair of*	desperate, desperation
*discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *go away, depart*	
*dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hesitate, doubt*	indubitable, dubious

			DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*efficiō *interficiō *perficiō	-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus,	*bring about, accomplish* *kill* *complete, accomplish*	
*premō, premere, pressī, pressus,		*press, oppress*	pressure, repress, etc.
recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,		*read aloud, recite*	recitation, recitative
*recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus,		*take back, receive;* sē recipere, *return, retreat*	
*remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsus,		*remain*	
*rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus,		*laugh, laugh at*	deride, risible, ridicule
*stō, stāre, stetī, stātus,		*stand*	state, station, stable
*superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,		*conquer, overcome, surpass*	insuperable

366. Adjectives and Pronouns.

		DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*ācer, ācris, ācre,	*sharp, keen, eager, active*	alacrity, acrimonious
*celer, celeris, celere,	*swift, quick*	celerity
dissimilis, -e,	*unlike, different*	dissimilar, etc.
*duodecim,	indeclinable, *twelve*	
*idōneus, -a, -um,	*fit, suitable*	
*incolumis, -e,	*safe, unharmed*	
*pedester, -tris, -tre,	*on foot, infantry* (as adj.)	pedestrian
*similis, -e,	*like, similar*	similarity, etc.
*tālis, -e,	*such, of such a kind*	retaliate

367. Miscellaneous.	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*ācriter, *sharply, eagerly*	
*apud, preposition with accusative, *among, at the house of*	
*bene, *well*	benefit, benediction
*celeriter, *quickly, swiftly*	
*fortiter, *bravely*	
*magnopere, *greatly, very*	
*parum, *little, a little*	
*quidem (never first in clause), *at least, indeed*	
*nē . . . quidem, with emphasized word between, *not even*	

ELEVENTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

New Words Used in Lessons XXXV–XXXVI

368. Nouns.	
*adventus, -ūs, M., *arrival, approach*	advent
colloquium, -ī, *conversation, dialogue*	colloquy, colloquial
*cornū, -ūs, N., *horn, wing* (of an army)	cornucopia, unicorn
*difficultās, -tātis, F., *difficulty*	
*equitātus, -ūs, M., *cavalry* (a branch of military service)	
*exercitus, -ūs, M., *army*	exercise
*exitus, -ūs, M., *going out, departure*	exit
*labor, labōris, M., *work, suffering*	labor, etc.
*laus, laudis, F., *praise*	laud, laudable, etc.
*manus, -ūs, F., *hand, band*	manual, manufacture
*nox, noctis (nocti-), F., *night*	nocturnal, equinoctial
*passus, -ūs, M., *step, pace* (about five feet)	
*pēs, pedis, M., *foot*	pedal, pedestal

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*potestās, -tātis, F., *power*	
*ratiō, -iōnis, F., *plan, way, manner*	rational
*senātus, -ūs, M., *senate*	senator, senatorial
*timor, -ōris, M., *fear*	timorous

369. Verbs.

*cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *stop, halt*	consistent, consist
*dormiō, dormīre, dormiī or dormīvī, dormītus, *sleep*	dormant, dormitory, dormouse
*gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *do, wear, carry on, wage*	gesture, belligerent
*ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, *show, display*	ostentatious, ostensible
*pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive, defeat*	pulse, expel, repellent
*resistō, -sistere, -stitī, *resist*	resistance, irresistible
*sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know*	science, conscious, etc.
*sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, realize*	sensible, sensitive, etc.
*surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus, *rise*	surge, insurgent, resurrection, etc.
*vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *overcome, conquer*	victor, convince, invincible

370. Adjectives and Pronouns.

*ego, meī, personal pronoun, *I;* plu. nōs, *we*	egoism, egotist, etc.
*īmus, -a, -um, *lowest, the-bottom-of*	
*ipse, -a, -um, intensive pronoun, *him-, her-, itself;* plu. *themselves*	
*mīlle, numeral indeclinable in sing., *thousand*; plural a noun mīlia, mīlium, N., *thousands*	millimeter, milligram, etc.

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
***plēnus, -a, -um,** *full*	plenty, plenary
proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, very near, next*	approximate, proximo
***recēns, recentis,** *fresh, recent*	recently, etc.
***suī** (no nom.), reflexive pronoun of 3rd person, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*	suicide
***suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its, their* (own); taking its meaning from subject of clause	
***tantus, -a, -um,** *so great, so much*	tantamount
***tū, tuī,** personal pronoun, *you;* plu. **vōs,** *you*	

371. Miscellaneous.

***deinde,** adv., *secondly, next*	
***enim,** conjunction (never first in clause), *for*	
***facile,** adv., *easily*	
***interim,** adv., *meanwhile*	interim
***prīmum,** adv., first	primary, primate
***propter,** prep. with accusative, *on account of, because of*	

IDIOMS

ad multam noctem, *till late at night*

multā nocte, *late at night*

in īmō carrō, *in the bottom of the wagon*

mīlle passūs, *mile* (thousand paces); plu. **mīlia passuum,** *miles* (thousands of paces)

sē recipere, *to retire, retreat, return, betake oneself*

TWELFTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

New Words Used in Lessons XXXVII–XL

372. Nouns.

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
*aciēs, aciēī, F., *line of battle*	
*beneficium, -ī, N., *kindness, favor*	beneficial, beneficent, etc.
*captīvus, -ī, *captive, prisoner*	captivity, etc.
cibus, -ī, M., *food*	
*cupiditās, -tātis, F., *desire, greed*	cupidity
*diēs, diēī, M. or F., *day*	diurnal
*dolor, dolōris, M., *pain, suffering, grief*	dolorous
*fidēs, fideī, F., *faith, confidence, protection, loyalty*	fidelity
*ignis, ignis (igni-), M., *fire*	ignite, ignition
mercātor, -tōris, M., *dealer*	mercatorial, merchandise
*modus, -ī, M., *manner, way*	mode, model
*mors, mortis (morti-), F., *death*	mortal, post mortem
*ōrdō, ōrdinis, M., *order, row, rank, arrangement*	ordinary, subordinate
*portus, -ūs, M., *harbor, port*	
*rēs, reī, F., *thing, event, circumstance*	rebus, real, reality
somnus, -ī, M., *sleep*	somnambulist, insomnia
*spēs, speī, F., *hope, promise*	
tēctum, -ī, N., *roof, house*	protect

373. Verbs.

*ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, *snatch away, save, rescue;* sē ēripere, *escape*	
*exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *shut out, exclude*	exclusion, exclusive
*expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out*	expel, expulsion

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
***ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *not know, be ignorant*	ignorance, ignoramus
***impellō** (like **expellō**), *drive on, excite*	impel, impulse
***maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus,** *stay, remain*	mansion, remain
***perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus,** *alarm*	
***perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus,** *arrive, come through*	parvenu
***reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus,** *give back, render, return*	
***trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus,** *hand over, give up*	tradition, etc.
***trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,** *lead over* or *across*	traduce

374. Miscellaneous.

ADJECTIVES

albus, -a, -um, *white*	albino, albumen
***cupidus, -a, -um,** *desirous, eager*	Cupid
extrēmus, -a, -um, *farthest, extreme, the-end-of*	extremity
***frūmentārius, -a, -um,** *pertaining to grain*	
***rēs frūmentāria,** *supply of grain*	
***perītus, -a, -um,** *skilled, skilful, experienced*	experience, expert
***propinquus, -a, -um,** *near*	propinquity
***quadringentī, -ae, -a,** *four hundred*	
***quantus, -a, -um,** *how great, how much?*	quantity, quantitative
***trecentī, -ae, -a,** *three hundred*	
***vīvus, -a, -um,** *live, living*	vivid, vivacious, revive

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
ADVERBS	
multō, *much, by much*	multiply
***tam**, *so*	
CONJUNCTIONS	
***nē**, with subjunctive, *in order that . . . not, so that . . . not*	
***ut**, with subjunctive, *in order that, so that;* or may be translated by infinitive with *to* expressing purpose	
IDIOMS	
ad extrēmam viam, *at the end of the road*	
in īmō nāvigiō, *in the bottom of the boat*	
iter facere, *to make a march* or *journey, to march* or *travel*	
prīmā lūce, *at dawn, at daybreak*	

THIRTEENTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

New Words Used in Lessons XLI–XLIII

375. Nouns.

animal, animālis (animāli-), N., *animal*	
***condiciō, -iōnis**, F., *condition*	conditional
***domus, -ūs**, F., *home, house*	domicile, domestic, etc.
***familia, -ae**, F., *family, household*	familiar
lacus, -ūs, M., *lake*	
***odium, -ī**, N., *hate, hatred*	odious
rūs, rūris, N., (locative **rūrī**), *country*	rural
taberna, -ae, F., *shop*	tavern, tabernacle
***turris, turris (turri-)**, F., *tower*	turret

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
***verbum, -ī,** N., *word*	verbal, verbosity
vestis, vestis (vesti-), F., *clothing, garment, tapestry* (found only in sing. in best Latin)	vesture, vestment
***vīs, (vīs),** F., *force, violence;* plu. **vīrēs,** *strength*	violent, vim

376. Verbs.

***circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus,** *put around, surround*	
***claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus,** *close*	clause, include, inclusion
***dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus,** *choose, select*	
***dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,** *put down, lay aside*	deposit, deponent, etc.
***dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus,** *cease, stop*	desist
***dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī,** *be lacking, be wanting*	
***doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus,** *show, teach*	doctor, document, doctrine
***exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus,** *pile up, erect*	structure, etc.
***impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītus,** *hinder, block*	impediment, impede
***imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus,** *command*	imperative, empire
***incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus,** *set fire to*	incense, incendiary
***invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus,** *envy*	invidious
***licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est,** (impersonal), *it is permitted, it is lawful*	license
***noceō, nocēre, nocuī,** *harm, injure*	innocent

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
pareō, parēre, paruī, paritus, *obey*	
***persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus,** *persuade*	persuasion
***praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus,** *instruct, order*	precept, preceptor
***praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus,** *put in charge of*	prefect
***praesum, praeesse, praefuī,** *be in charge of*	present
***quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus,** *ask, inquire*	inquisitive, question
***repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsus,** *drive back*	repel, repellent, repulsive
***sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus,** *sit*	sedentary, session
***succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus,** *come up, succeed*	succession, successive
***sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus,** *take*	assume, consumption, etc.
***trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus,** *throw across, pierce*	trajectory
***vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *wound*	vulnerable

377. Adjectives.

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*	
benignus, -a, -um, *kind*	benign, benignant
***commūnis, -e,** *common, general*	community, commune
***ducentī, -ae, -a,** *two hundred*	
***familiāris, -e,** *familiar, intimate*	familiarity
***necessārius, -a, -um,** *necessary, urgent*	

378. Miscellaneous.

***amplē,** adverb, *fully*	amply
***dīligenter,** adverb, *carefully*	diligently, etc.
***graviter,** adverb, *heavily, severely*	gravely, etc.

DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS

*postquam, conjunction with perfect indicative, *after*
*ubi, conjunction with indicative, *when, where*

IDIOMS

poenās sūmere (with dē and abl.), *to inflict punishment*
verba facere, *to talk*

FOURTEENTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

NEW WORDS USED IN LESSONS XLIV–L

379. Nouns.

*aedificium, -ī, N., *building*	edifice, edify, etc.
*altitūdō, -tūdinis, F., *height, depth*	altitude
*clāmor, clāmōris, M., *shout, shouting, noise*	clamor, clamorous
*cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, F., *habit, custom*	
currus, ūs, M., *chariot*	
fenestra, -ae, F., *window*	
forum, -ī, N., *forum, market place*	forensic
imāgō, imāginis, F., *image, likeness, statue, picture, mask*	imagine, imagination
*imperium, -ī, N., *command, power, government*	empire, imperial, imperious
*magistrātus, -ūs, M., *magistrate, office*	magistracy
*magnitūdō, -tūdinis, F., *size, extent, importance*	magnitude
mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*	commensal
*rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F., *state, commonwealth*	republic, republican

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
senātor, senātōris, M., *senator*	senatorial
***spatium, -ī,** N., *space, time, distance*	spacious
spectāculum, -ī, N., *sight, show*	spectacle, spectacular
templum, -ī, N., *temple*	Templar

380. Verbs.

***audeō, audēre, ausus sum,** *dare, venture*	audacious, audacity
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shout*	exclamation, reclaim, etc.
***coepī, coepisse,** *began*	
***cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, fectus,** *finish, exhaust*	
***expōnō, -pōnere, posuī, positus,** *set forth, explain*	expose, exposition, expository
***oppōnō,** etc., *put against, oppose*	opponent, opposite
***prōpōnō,** etc., *put before, propose*	proponent, proposition
***īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus,** *arrange, draw up*	instruction, instructor
***interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus,** *cut off, stop*	
***obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus,** *besiege*	obsession
***ōdī, ōdisse,** *hate*	odious
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *decorate, adorn, equip*	ornate, adornment
***permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsus,** *remain*	permanent
***praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus,** *foretell*	predict, prediction
***prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus,** *throw forward*	project, etc.
***submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,** *send to the help of, yield*	submit, submissive, etc.

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
***suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus,** *take up, undertake*	susceptible
***sustineō** (**sub**+**teneō**), **-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus,** *hold up, sustain*	sustenance
***temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *test, try, attempt*	tempt, temptation, tentative

381. Miscellaneous.

ADJECTIVES

***centum,** indeclinable numeral, *one hundred*	century, centenary, etc.
***equester, -tris, -tre,** *on horseback, mounted, cavalry* (adj.), *equestrian*	equestrian
***mīlitāris, -e,** *military* ***rēs mīlitāris,** *military affairs, art of war*	
***sescentī, -ae, -a,** *six hundred*	
***singulāris, -e,** *unusual, remarkable*	singular, singularity
***summus, -a, -um,** *highest, the-top-of* **uterque, utraque, utrumque,** (gen. **utrīusque**), *each* (of two), *both*	sum, consummate, summary

ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS

dēnique, *finally, at last*
***numquam,** *never;* **nōnnumquam,** *sometimes*
***ob** (prep. with acc.), *against, on account of*
***sub** (prep. with abl. or acc.), *under*

IDIOMS

aetāte cōnfectus, *exhausted with age, aged*
ōrātiōnem habēre, *to deliver a speech*
summum tēctum, *the top of the roof*

FIFTEENTH SPECIAL VOCABULARY

New Words Used in Lessons LI–LX

382. Nouns.

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
āctōr, āctōris, M., *actor*	
***adulēscēns, adulēscentis,** M., *youth, young man*	adolescent, adult
***conventus, ūs,** M., *meeting*	convention
***cursus, -ūs,** M., *running, speed, race*	course
***grātia, -ae,** F., *influence, favor;* plu. *thanks*	gracious, grace, etc.
mēnsis, mēnsis (mēnsi-), M., *month*	
***nūntius, ī,** M., *messenger, message*	
oculus, -ī, M., *eye*	ocular, oculist
***praetor, praetōris,** M., *praetor, judge*	pretorian
***sententia, -ae,** F., *opinion, decision*	sentence
theātrum, -ī, N., *theatre, playhouse*	theatrical, etc.

383. Verbs.

***arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum,** *think, judge, consider*	arbitrary, arbitration
***cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** *try, attempt*	conative
***cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus,** *place, appoint, decide*	constitute, constitution
***dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus,** *look down on, despise*	despicable
***eō, īre, īvī* or *iī, itus,** *go*	
***adeō,** etc., *go to, visit*	
***exeō,** etc., *go out, go forth*	exit
***ineō,** etc., *enter on, begin*	initial, initiate
***intereō,** etc., *perish, vanish*	
***pereō,** etc., *perish*	
***redeō,** etc., *go back, return*	
***subeō,** etc., *undergo, suffer*	

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
***trānseō**, etc., *go across, cross*	transit, transition, transitory
***dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus**, *divide, separate*	divisor, division
***experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum**, *try, test*	experiment, expert
***ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry, bring*	defer, confer, collate, translate, etc.
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, *carry away, carry off*	ablative
***referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**, *bring back, report*	refer, relate, etc.
***fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *be made, be done, happen*	benefit, satisfy
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy*	fructify, fruition
***hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, *urge*	exhort, exhortation
***immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**, *let in, admit*	
ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *enter, begin*	ingredient, ingress
***loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**, *speak, talk*	loquacious, colloquy, eloquent, elocution
morior, morīrī or **morī, mortuus sum**, *die*	mortuary, mortal
***patior, patī, passus sum**, *suffer, allow, permit*	patient, passion, passive
***polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**, *promise*	
***potior, potīrī, potītus sum**, *get possession of, secure*	
***prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum**, *advance, go forward*	progress, progression, etc.
***reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus**, *find, discover*	repertory
***sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, *follow*	consecutive, sequence, subsequent

	DERIVATIVES OR RELATED WORDS
***tueor, tuērī, tuitus** or **tūtus sum**, *look at, protect, maintain*	tutor, tuition
***ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, *use, employ*	utility, useful, abuse
***vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, *fear, respect*	revere, reverent, reverend
***volō, velle, voluī**, *wish, be willing*	benevolent, malevolent
***nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, *not wish, be unwilling*	
mālō, mālle, māluī, *wish rather, prefer*	

384. Miscellaneous.

***nōnnūllus, -a, -um**, adj., (gen. **-īus**), *some*	
***vetus, veteris**, adj., (comp. **vetustior**, sup. **veterrimus**), *old, former*	veteran
***causā**, with genitive preceding, *for the sake of, for the purpose of*	

IDIOMS

aegrē ferre, *to be distressed*
certiōrem facere, *to inform*
cōnsilium capere, *to form a plan*
inter sē dare, *to exchange*
ōrātiōnem habēre, *to deliver a speech*
poenās dare, *to suffer punishment*

APPENDIX

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

silva, F., *forest*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	silva	silvae
GEN.	silvae	silvārum
DAT.	silvae	silvīs
ACC.	silvam	silvās
ABL.	silvā	silvīs

SECOND DECLENSION

	servus, M., *slave*		rēgnum, N., *kingdom*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	servus	servī	rēgnum	rēgna
GEN.	servī	servōrum	rēgnī	rēgnōrum
DAT.	servō	servīs	rēgnō	rēgnīs
ACC.	servum	servōs	rēgnum	rēgna
ABL.	servō	servīs	rēgnō	rēgnīs

	puer, M., *boy, child*		ager, M., *field*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs
ACC.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs

THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT STEMS

	rēx, M. *king*	cīvitās, F. *state, city*	homō, M., F. *man*	ōrātiō, F. *speech*
		SINGULAR		
NOM.	rēx (x = gs)	cīvitās	homō	ōrātiō
GEN.	rēgis	cīvitātis	hominis	ōrātiōnis
DAT.	rēgī	cīvitātī	hominī	ōrātiōnī
ACC.	rēgem	cīvitātem	hominem	ōrātiōnem
ABL.	rēge	cīvitāte	homine	ōrātiōne
		PLURAL		
NOM.	rēgēs	cīvitātēs	hominēs	ōrātiōnēs
GEN.	rēgum	cīvitātum	hominum	ōrātiōnum
DAT.	rēgibus	cīvitātibus	hominibus	ōrātiōnibus
ACC.	rēgēs	cīvitātēs	hominēs	ōrātiōnēs
ABL.	rēgibus	cīvitātibus	hominibus	ōrātiōnibus

	tempus, N., *time*	caput, N., *head, chapter*	nōmen, N., *name, noun*
		SINGULAR	
NOM.	tempus	caput	nōmen
GEN.	temporis	capitis	nōminis
DAT.	temporī	capitī	nōminī
ACC.	tempus	caput	nōmen
ABL.	tempore	capite	nōmine
		PLURAL	
NOM.	tempora	capita	nōmina
GEN.	temporum	capitum	nōminum
DAT.	temporibus	capitibus	nōminibus
ACC.	tempora	capita	nōmina
ABL.	temporibus	capitibus	nōminibus

I-STEMS

	hostis, M. *enemy*	cohors, F. *cohort*	mōns, M. *mountain*	mare, N. *sea*
Stem	hosti-	cohorti-	monti-	mari-
		SINGULAR		
NOM.	hostis	cohors	mōns	mare
GEN.	hostis	cohortis	montis	maris
DAT.	hostī	cohortī	montī	marī
ACC.	hostem	cohortem	montem	mare
ABL.	hoste	cohorte	monte	marī
		PLURAL		
NOM.	hostēs	cohortēs	montēs	maria
GEN.	hostium	cohortium	montium	marium
DAT.	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus
ACC.	hostīs (ēs)	cohortīs (ēs)	montīs (ēs)	maria
ABL.	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus

FOURTH DECLENSION

	passus, M., *pace*		cornū, N., *horn, wing*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
GEN.	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
DAT.	passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus
ACC.	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
ABL.	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

	diēs, M., *day*		rēs, F., *thing*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
GEN.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
DAT.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

IRREGULAR NOUNS

vīs, F., *force*		domus, F., *house, home*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM. vīs	vīrēs	NOM. domus	domūs
GEN. (vīs)	vīrium	GEN. domūs	domōrum or domuum
DAT. (vī)	vīribus	DAT. domuī or domō	domibus
ACC. vim	vīrīs (ēs)	ACC. domum	domōs or domūs
ABL. vī	vīribus	ABL. domō or domū	domibus
		LOC. domī (at home)	

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	longus	longa	longum
GEN.	longī	longae	longī
DAT.	longō	longae	longō
ACC.	longum	longam	longum
ABL.	longō	longā	longō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	longī	longae	longa
GEN.	longōrum	longārum	longōrum
DAT.	longīs	longīs	longīs
ACC.	longōs	longās	longa
ABL.	longīs	longīs	longīs

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī

etc., like longus

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī

etc., like longus

	SINGULAR					
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

	SINGULAR					
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACC.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

THIRD DECLENSION

fortis, -e, *brave, strong* pār, gen. paris, *equal*

	SINGULAR			
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	fortis	forte	pār	pār
GEN.	fortis	fortis	paris	paris
DAT.	fortī	fortī	parī	parī
ACC.	fortem	forte	parem	pār
ABL.	fortī	fortī	parī	parī
	PLURAL			
NOM.	fortēs	fortia	parēs	paria
GEN.	fortium	fortium	parium	parium
DAT.	fortibus	fortibus	paribus	paribus
ACC.	fortīs (ēs)	fortia	parīs (ēs)	paria
ABL.	fortibus	fortibus	paribus	paribus

ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen, sharp*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris (ēs)	ācris (ēs)	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
GEN.	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
DAT.	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
ACC.	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
ABL.	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

	duo, *two*			trēs, *three*	
	M.	F.	N	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, tris	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longus, -a, -um	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e, *brave*	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
levis, -e, *light*	levior, -ius	levissimus, -a, -um
miser, -era, -erum	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
aeger, -gra, -grum	aegrior, -ius	aegerrimus, -a, -um
celer, celeris, celere	celerior, -ius	celerrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
bonus, -a, -um, *good*	melior, melius, *better*	optimus, -a, -um, *best*
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	peior, peius, *worse*	pessimus, -a, -um, *worst*
magnus, -a, -um, *large*	maior, maius, *larger*	maximus, -a, -um, *largest*
multus, -a, -um, *much*	—, plūs, *more*	plūrimus, -a, -um, *most*
multī, -ae, -a, *many*	plūrēs, plūra, *more*	plūrimī, -ae, -a, *most*
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	minor, minus, *smaller*	minimus, -a, -um, *smallest*

ADVERBS

COMPARISON

lātē	lātius	lātissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
similiter	similius	simillimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best*
male, *ill*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
magnopere, *greatly, particularly*	magis, *rather, more*	maximē, *especially, most*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *most*
parvum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least*
diū, *long* (time)	diūtius, *longer*	diūtissimē, *longest*
saepe, *often*	saepius, *oftener*	saepissimē, *oftenest*

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

RELATIVE PRONOUN

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL			PRONOMINAL MEANINGS			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	PLU.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea	*he*	*she*	*it*	*they*
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	*his*	*her*	*its*	*their*
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs	*to him*	*to her*	*to it*	*to them*
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea	*him*	*her*	*it*	*them*
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs	*by, etc., him*	*by, etc., her*	*by, etc., it*	*by, etc., them*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING. & PLU.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——
Gen.	meī	nostrum (ī)	tuī	vestrum (ī)	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

REGULAR VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
vocō	vocāmus	vocor	vocāmur
vocās	vocātis	vocāris	vocāminī
vocat	vocant	vocātur	vocantur
IMPERFECT			
vocābam	vocābāmus	vocābar	vocābāmur
vocābās	vocābātis	vocābāris	vocābāminī
vocābat	vocābant	vocābātur	vocābantur
FUTURE			
vocābō	vocābimus	vocābor	vocābimur
vocābis	vocābitis	vocāberis	vocābiminī
vocābit	vocābunt	vocābitur	vocābuntur
PERFECT			
vocāvī	vocāvimus	vocātus, -a, -um { sum, es, est	vocātī, -ae, -a { sumus, estis, sunt
vocāvistī	vocāvistis		
vocāvit	vocāvērunt		
PLUPERFECT			
vocāveram	vocāverāmus	vocātus, -a, -um { eram, erās, erat	vocātī, -ae, -a { erāmus, erātis, erant
vocāverās	vocāverātis		
vocāverat	vocāverant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
vocāverō	vocāverimus	vocātus, -a, -um { erō, eris, erit	vocātī, -ae, -a { erimus, eritis, erunt
vocāveris	vocāveritis		
vocāverit	vocāverint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
vocem	vocēmus	vocer	vocēmur
vocēs	vocētis	vocēris	vocēminī
vocet	vocent	vocētur	vocentur
IMPERFECT			
vocārem	vocārēmus	vocārer	vocārēmur
vocārēs	vocārētis	vocārēris	vocārēminī
vocāret	vocārent	vocārētur	vocārentur
PERFECT			
vocāverim	vocāverīmus	vocātus, -a, um { sim / sīs / sit	vocātī, -ae, -a { sīmus / sītis / sint
vocāverīs	vocāverītis		
vocāverit	vocāverint		
PLUPERFECT			
vocāvissem	vocāvissēmus	vocātus, -a, um { essem / essēs / esset	vocātī, -ae, -a { essēmus / essētis / essent
vocāvissēs	vocāvissētis		
vocāvisset	vocāvissent		

IMPERATIVE (PRESENT)

vocā, *call thou*, vocāte, *call ye* vocāre, *be thou called*, vocāminī, *be ye called*

INFINITIVE

PRES. vocāre, *to call* vocārī, *to be called* [*called*
PERF. vocāvisse, *to have called* vocātus, -a, -um esse, *to have been*
FUT. vocātūrus, -a, -um esse, vocātum īrī, *to be about to be called*
to be about to call

PARTICIPLES

PRES. vocāns, -antis, *calling*
FUT. vocātūrus, -a, -um, *about to call*
FUT. (GERUNDIVE) vocandus, -a, -um, *to be called*
PERF. vocātus, -a, -um, *called, having been called*

GERUND

GEN. vocandī, *of calling*
DAT. vocandō, *for calling*
ACC. vocandum, *calling*
ABL. vocandō, *by calling*

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

ACC. vocātum, *to call*
ABL. vocātū, *to call, in the calling*

SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
mònēs	monētis	monēris	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
IMPERFECT			
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur
FUTURE			
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
PERFECT			
monuī	monuimus	monitus, sum / es / est -a, -um	monitī, sumus / estis / sunt -ae, -a
monuistī	monuistis		
monuit	monuērunt		
PLUPERFECT			
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus, eram / erās / erat -a, -um	monitī, erāmus / erātis / erant -ae, -a
monuerās	monuerātis		
monuerat	monuerant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus, erō / eris / erit -a, -um	monitī, erimus / eritis / erunt -ae, -a
monueris	monueritis		
monuerit	monuerint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur
IMPERFECT			
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
PERFECT			
monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus, sim / sīs / sit -a, um	monitī, sīmus / sītis / sint -ae, -a
monuerīs	monuerītis		
monuerit	monuerint		
PLUPERFECT			
monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus, essem / essēs / esset -a, -um	monitī, essēmus / essētis / essent -ae, -a
monuissēs	monuissētis		
monuisset	monuissent		

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē monēte — monēre monēminī

INFINITIVE

PRES.	monēre	monērī
PERF.	monuisse	monitus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	monitūrus, -a, -um esse	monitum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	monēns, -entis	———
FUT.	monitūrus, -a, -um	monendus, -a, -um
PERF.	———	monitus, -a, -um

GERUND

NOM.	———
GEN.	monendī
DAT.	monendō
ACC.	monendum
ABL.	monendō

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

ACC.	monitum
ABL.	monitū

THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
dūcō	dūcimus	dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris	dūcimini
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur
IMPERFECT			
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur
FUTURE			
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris	dūcēmini
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur
PERFECT			
dūxī	dūximus	ductus, -a, -um { sum / es / est	ductī, -ae, -a { sumus / estis / sunt
dūxistī	dūxistis		
dūxit	dūxērunt		
PLUPERFECT			
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus, -a, -um { eram / erās / erat	ductī, -ae, -a { erāmus / erātis / erant
dūxerās	dūxerātis		
dūxerat	dūxerant		
FUTURE PERFECT			
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus, -a, -um { erō / eris / erit	ductī, -ae, -a { erimus / eritis / erunt
dūxeris	dūxeritis		
dūxerit	dūxerint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT	
dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur
		IMPERFECT	
dūcerem	dūcerēmus	ducerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	ducerēris	ducerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	ducerētur	ducerentur
		PERFECT	
dūxerim	dūxerīmus	ductus, sim	ductī, simus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis	ductus, sīs	ductī, sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	ductus, sit	ductī, sint
		PLUPERFECT	
dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus, essem	ductī, essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	ductus, essēs	ductī, essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent	ductus, esset	ductī, essent

IMPERATIVE

		PRESENT	
dūc*	dūcite	dūcere	dūciminī

INFINITIVE

PRES.	dūcere	dūcī
PERF.	dūxisse	ductus, -a, um, esse
FUT.	ductūrus, -a, -um esse	ductum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	dūcēns, -entis	———
FUT.	ductūrus, -a, -um	dūcendus, -a, -um
PERF.	———	ductus, -a, -um

GERUND

NOM.	———
GEN.	dūcendī
DAT.	dūcendō
ACC.	dūcendum
ABL.	dūcendō

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

ACC.	ductum
ABL.	ductū

* Formed like **dūc** are the imperatives **dīc, fac, fer.** Other 3rd conjugation verbs employ the present stem, as **lege, curre.**

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN *IO*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
		IMPERFECT	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
		FUTURE	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
		PERFECT	
cēpī	cēpimus	captus, -a, -um sum / es / est	captī, -ae, -a sumus / estis / sunt
cēpistī	cēpistis		
cēpit	cēpērunt		
		PLUPERFECT	
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus, -a, -um eram / erās / erat	captī, -ae, -a erāmus / erātis / erant
cēperās	cēperātis		
cēperat	cēperant		
		FUTURE PERFECT	
cēperō	cēperimus	captus, -a, -um erō / eris / erit	captī, -ae, -a erimus / eritis / erunt
cēperis	cēperitis		
cēperit	cēperint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
IMPERFECT			
caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur
PERFECT			
cēperim	cēperīmus	captus, sim / sīs / sit	captī, sīmus / sītis / sint
cēperīs	cēperītis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
cēperit	cēperint		
PLUPERFECT			
cēpissem	cēpissēmus	captus, essem / essēs / esset	captī, essēmus / essētis / essent
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
cēpisset	cēpissent		

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
cape	capite	capere	capiminī

INFINITIVE

PRES.	capere	capī
PERF.	cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	capiēns, -entis	———
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um
PERF.	———	captus, -a, -um

GERUND

NOM.	———
GEN.	capiendī
DAT.	capiendō
ACC.	capiendum
ABL.	capiendō

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

ACC. captum

ABL. captū

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
IMPERFECT			
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur
FUTURE			
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur
PERFECT			
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus, -a, -um sum	audītī, -ae, -a sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	audītus, -a, -um es	audītī, -ae, -a estis
audīvit	audīvērunt	audītus, -a, -um est	audītī, -ae, -a sunt
PLUPERFECT			
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus, -a, -um eram	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	audītus, -a, -um erās	audītī, -ae, -a erātis
audīverat	audīverant	audītus, -a, -um erat	audītī, -ae, -a erant
FUTURE PERFECT			
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus, -a, -um erō	audītī, -ae, -a erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus, -a, -um eris	audītī, -ae, -a eritis
audīverit	audīverint	audītus, -a, -um erit	audītī, -ae, -a erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT	
audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur
		IMPERFECT	
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur
		PERFECT	
audīverim	audīverīmus	audītus, -a, um sim / sīs / sit	audītī, -ae, -a simus / sītis / sint
audīverīs	audīverītis		
audīverit	audīverint		
		PLUPERFECT	
audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus, -a, um essem / essēs / esset	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus / essētis / essent
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		
audīvisset	audīvissent		

IMPERATIVE

		PRESENT	
audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī

INFINITIVE

PRES.	audīre	audīrī
PERF.	audīvisse	audītus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um esse	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	audiēns, -entis	———
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um
PERF.	———	audītus, -a, -um

GERUND

NOM.	———
GEN.	audiendī
DAT.	audiendō
ACC.	audiendum
ABL.	audiendō

SUPINE (ACTIVE)

ACC.	audītum
ABL.	audītū

IRREGULAR VERBS

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	PRESENT		
sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
	IMPERFECT		
eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent
	FUTURE		
erō	erimus		
eris	eritis		
erit	erunt		
	PERFECT		
fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerīmus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
fuit	fuērunt	fuerit	fuerint
	PLUPERFECT		
fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent
	FUTURE PERFECT		
fuerō	fuerimus		
fueris	fueritis		
fuerit	fuerint		

IMPERATIVE

PRES. es este

INFINITIVE

PRES. esse
PERF. fuisse
FUT. futūrus, -a, -um

PARTICIPLE

FUT. futūrus, -a, -um

possum, posse, potuī, *be able*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	possim
IMPERF.	poteram	possem
FUT.	poterō	
PERF.	potuī	potuerim
PLUP.	potueram	potuissem
FUT. PERF.	potuerō	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	posse	PRES. potēns
PERF.	potuisse	

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear*

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUPERF.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
IMPERF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUPERF.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns, -entis	———
FUT.	lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um
PERF.	———	lātus, -a, -um

GERUND		SUPINE (ACTIVE)	
GEN.	ferendī	ACC.	lātum
DAT.	ferendō	ABL.	lātū
ACC.	ferendum		
ABL.	ferendō		

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itus, *go*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	eō	īmus	eam	I	īte
	īs	ītis			
	it	eunt			
IMPF.	ībam		īrem		
FUT.	ībō		———		
PERF.	iī		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		īssem		
F. P.	ierō		———		

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	īre	iēns, euntis
PERF.	īsse (īvisse)	itus*, -a, -um
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um esse	itūrus, -a, -um

GERUND		SUPINE
GEN.	eundī	
DAT.	eundō	
ACC.	eundum	itum
ABL.	eundō	itū

* This participle is used throughout only in transitive compounds, such as **adeō**, *approach*, **ineō**, *enter*. With the simple verb only the neuter **itum** is used, as in **itum est**.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, become, happen*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
PRES.	fīō fīmus	fīam	fī fīte
	fīs fītis		
	fit fīunt		
IMPF.	fīēbam	fierem	
FUT.	fīam	——	
PERF.	factus sum	factus sim	
PLUP.	factus eram	factus essem	
F. P.	factus erō	——	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	fierī	GER. faciendus
PERF.	factus esse	PERF. factus
FUT.	factum īrī	

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing* **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

	INDICATIVE		
PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
	SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
	IMPERATIVE		
PRES.		nōlī	nōlīte

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns

DEPONENT VERBS*

Conj.

I. **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum,** *think*
II. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** *fear*
III. **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum,** *use*
III. (io) **patior, patī, passus sum,** *allow, suffer*
IV. **experior, experīrī, expertus sum** *try*

INDICATIVE

		PRESENT		
arbitror	vereor	ūtor	patior	experior
arbitrāris	verēris	ūteris	pateris	experīris
arbitrātur	verētur	ūtitur	patitur	experītur
arbitrāmur	verēmur	ūtimur	patimur	experīmur
arbitrāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	experīminī
arbitrantur	verentur	ūtuntur	patiuntur	experiuntur
		IMPERFECT		
arbitrābar, etc.	verēbar, etc.	ūtēbar, etc.	patiēbar, etc.	experiēbar, etc.
		FUTURE		
arbitrābor	verēbor	ūtar	patiar	experiar
		PERFECT		
arbitrātus sum	veritus sum	ūsus sum	passus sum	expertus sum
		PLUPERFECT		
arbitrātus eram	veritus eram	ūsus eram	passus eram	expertus eram
		FUTURE PERFECT		
arbitrātus erō	veritus erō	ūsus erō	passus erō	expertus erō

* For semideponents see page 286.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

arbitrer	verear	ūtar	patiar	experiar

IMPERFECT

arbitrārer	verērer	ūterer	paterer	experīrer

PERFECT

arbitrātus sim	veritus sim	ūsus sim	passus sim	expertus sim

PLUPERFECT

arbitrātus essem	veritus essem	ūsus essem	passus essem	expertus essem

IMPERATIVE

Sing. arbitrāre	verēre	ūtere	patere	experīre
Plu. arbitrāminī	verēminī	ūtiminī	patiminī	experīminī

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

arbitrārī	verērī	ūtī	patī	experīrī

PERFECT

arbitrātus esse	veritus esse	ūsus esse	passus esse	expertus esse

FUTURE

arbitrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	ūsūrus esse	passūrus esse	expertūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT ACTIVE

arbitrāns	verēns	ūtēns	patiēns	experiēns

FUTURE ACTIVE

arbitrātūrus	veritūrus	ūsūrus	passūrus	expertūrus

PERFECT ACTIVE

arbitrātus	veritus	ūsus	passus	expertus

FUTURE PASSIVE (GERUNDIVE)

arbitrandus	verendus	ūtendus	patiendus	experiendus

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PRES.	vocātūrus	**sum,** *I am about to call*
IMPERF.		**eram,** *I was about to call*
FUT.		**erō,** *I shall be about to call*
PERF.		**fuī,** *I was about to call*
PLUP.		**fueram,** *I had been about to call*
FUT. PERF.		**fuerō,** *I shall have been about to call*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	vocātūrus sim	PERF.	vocātūrus fuerim
IMPERF.	vocātūrus essem	PLUP.	vocātūrus fuissem

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: PASSIVE

		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	vocandus	**sum,** *I am to be called, must be called*	vocandus	**sim**
IMPERF.		**eram,** *I was to be called, had to be called*		**essem**
FUT.		**erō,** *I shall have to be called*		
PERF.		**fuī,** *I was to be called, had to be called*		**fuerim**
PLUP.		**fueram,** *I had had to be called*		**fuissem**
FUT. PERF.		**fuerō,** *I shall have had to be called*		

VOCABULARY

LATIN–ENGLISH

ENGLISH–LATIN

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	*n., neut.*	neuter
acc.	accusative	*nom.*	nominative
adj.	adjective	*part.*	participle
adv.	adverb	*pass.*	passive
conj.	conjunction	*perf.*	perfect
dat.	dative	*pers.*	person, personal
f., fem.	feminine	*pl., plu.*	plural
gen.	genitive	*prep.*	preposition
ind.	indicative	*rel.*	relative
interrog.	interrogative	*sing.*	singular
intr.	intransitive	*subj.*	subjunctive
m., masc.	masculine	*tr.*	transitive

LATIN-ENGLISH

A

ā *or* **ab**, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from, by

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *tr.*, hide, conceal

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead away, carry off

ab-sum, abesse, āfuī, —, *intr.*, be away, be absent

ac, *see* **atque**

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr.*, (**ad**+**capiō**), accept, receive

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, keen, eager, active

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle, battle line

ācriter, *adv.*, (**ācer**), sharply, eagerly

actor, -ōris, *m.*, actor

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward

ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *tr.*, add

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead to, bring to

ad-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **īvī, -itus**, *tr. and intr.*, go to, visit

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *tr.*, (**ad**+**habeō**), have present, summon

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (**ad**+**iaciō**), throw to, add

ad-moneō, -ēre, -monuī, -monitus, *tr.*, remind

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be near, be present, help

adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, young man, youth

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, (**ad**+**veniō**), arrival, approach

aedificium, -ī, *n.*, building

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, just, fair

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, age

ager, agrī, *m.*, field

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *tr.*, do, drive, act; (*of time*) pass, spend

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white

alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others

alter, -tera, -terum, *adj.*, the other (*of two*); **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . alterī**, the one party . . . the other party

altitūdō, -inis, *f.*, (**altus**), height, depth

altus, -a, um, *adj.*, high, tall, deep

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, walk

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, (**amīcus**), friendship

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly
amīcus, -ī, *m.*, friend
ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, lose
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, love
amplē, *adv.*, (**amplus**), fully
amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, distinguished
angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner
angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow
animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal
animus, -ī, *m.*, mind, feelings, heart, spirit, courage
annus, -ī, *m.*, year
ante, *adv.*, before, ago; *prep. with acc.*, before
anteā, *adv.*, before, before this, formerly
ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *tr. and intr.*, go before, excel, surpass
antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**ante**), ancient
apertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, open
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, name, call (*by name*)
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, draw near, approach
apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, at the house of
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, think, judge, consider
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree
arma, -ōrum, *n. plu.*, arms, weapons
ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *tr. and intr.*, climb
Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plu.*, Athens
atque (*or* **ac** *before word beginning with consonant*), *conj.*, and, and also
auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*, influence
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *tr. and intr.*, dare, venture
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *tr.*, hear, hear of
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, *tr.*, (**ab**+**ferō**), carry away, carry off
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or
autem, *conj., postpositive*, besides, however, nevertheless
auxilium, -ī, *n.*, aid, help
avia, -ae, *f.*, grandmother

B

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, barbarous; *as noun,* **barbarus, -ī,** *m.*, barbarian, foreigner
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war
bene, *adv.*, (**bonus**), well
beneficium, -ī, *n.*, (**bene**+**faciō**), favor, kindness
benignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, kind
bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good

C

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *tr.*, take, capture; *with* **cōnsilium,** form
captīvus, -ī, *m.*, (**capiō**), prisoner, captive
caput, -itis, *n.*, head, chapter
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, cabin
castra, -ōrum, *n. plu.*, camp
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason
causā, *with gen. preceding*, for the sake of, for the purpose of
caverna, -ae, *f.*, cave
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, *intr.*, yield, go
celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick
celeritās, -ātis, *f.*, (**celer**), speed, swiftness
celeriter, *adv.*, (**celer**), quickly, swiftly
centum, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, one hundred
certē, *adv.*, (**certus**), certainly
certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, definite, fixed; **certiōrem facere,** inform
cibus, -ī, *m.*, food
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around
circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *tr.*, put around, surround
circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *tr.*, come round, surround
cīvis, -is, *m.*, citizen
cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, (**cīvis**), citizenship, state, city
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, shout
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, (**clāmō**), shout, shouting, noise
clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, famous
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *tr.*, close
coëmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *tr.*, buy, purchase
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *tr. and intr.*, began
cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, *tr.*, learn, ascertain
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, (**con**+**agō**), collect, compel
cohors, cohortis, *f.*, band, cohort
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, entrust, commit; *with* **proelium,** begin
com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *tr.*, alarm, excite
commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common
com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, prepare, procure, provide
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, arouse, excite
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition
con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead *or* bring together
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr.*, (**con**+**faciō**), finish, exhaust; **aetāte confectus,** aged
cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus, *intr.*, trust
cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, strengthen, encourage
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (**con**+**iaciō**), throw together, hurl
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, try, attempt
cōn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *tr.*, enroll, enlist
cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, save fully, preserve
cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, advice, purpose, plan; **cōnsilium capere,** form a plan

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *intr.*, stop, halt
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *tr. and intr.*, place, appoint, decide
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, habit, custom
cōnsul, -is, *m.*, consul
cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, *tr.*, consult
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *intr.*, fight, struggle, hasten
contineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus, *tr.*, (**con**+**teneō**), hold together, contain, confine
con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *intr.*, come together
conventus, -ūs, *m.*, (**conveniō**), meeting
con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, call together
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply; *plu.*, troops, forces
Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of an army*)
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body
cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day
crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, frequent
crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel
crūdēlissimus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, very cruel
Cuba, -ae, *f.*, Cuba
cubiculum, -ī, *n.*, bedroom
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with; *conj.*, when, while
cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*, (**cupidus**), desire, greed
cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**cupiō**), desirous, eager
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *tr.*, wish, desire
cūr, *interrog. adv.*, why?
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *intr.*, run
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, (**currō**), running, race, speed

D

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, down from, about, concerning
dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *tr.*, owe, ought
decem, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, ten
decimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**decem**), tenth
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *tr.*, defend, protect
dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr. and intr.*, (**dē**+**faciō**), fail, revolt, rebel
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (**dē**+**iaciō**), throw down, disappoint
deinde, *adv.*, secondly, next
dēligo, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *tr.*, choose, select
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, point out, show
dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally
dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *tr.*, put down, lay aside
dē-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, carry off

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *intr.*, climb down, descend

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *intr.*, stop, cease

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, despair, despair of

dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *tr. and intr.*, look down on, despise

dē-sum, deesse, dēfuī, —, *intr.*, be lacking, be wanting

deus, -ī, *m.*, god

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, eat up

dexter, -tra, -trum, right (*hand*); *as noun,* **dextra, -ae,** *f.*, right hand

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *tr.*, say, speak

diēs, ēī, *m. or f.*, day

difficilis, -e, *adj.*, (dis+facilis), difficult, hard

difficultās, -ātis, *f.*, (difficilis), difficulty

dignitās, -ātis, *f.* worth, position

dīligenter, *adv.*, carefully

dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, care, painstaking

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, send away, let go

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.*, go away, depart

discipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil, student

dis-similis, -e, *adj.*, unlike, different

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *tr.*, divide, separate

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *tr.*, give; **poenās dare,** suffer punishment

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *tr.*, teach, show

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, grief, suffering

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, lord

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift, present

dormiō, -īre, dormiī *or* **dormīvī, dormītus,** *intr.*, sleep, be asleep

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, doubt, hesitate

ducentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, (duo+centum), two hundred

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *tr.*, lead, bring, take, drive

duo, -ae, -o, *numeral adj.*, two

duodecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (duo+decem), twelve

duo-dē-vīgintī, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, eighteen

dux, ducis, *m.*, (dūcō), leader, general

E

ē, *see* **ex**

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, *tr.*, eat

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead out, bring out

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr.*, (ex+faciō), bring about, accomplish

ego, meī, *pers. pronoun,* I

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.*, extraordinary, unusual, eminent

ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (ex+iaciō), throw out, drive out, eject

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, let out, let go

enim, *conj., postpositive,* for

eō, īre, īvī *or* iī, itus, *intr.*, go

eques, -itis, *m.*, (equus), horseman, cavalryman, knight; *plu.*, cavalry

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, (eques), of cavalry, cavalry-, on horseback, mounted, equestrian

equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, (eques), cavalry

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse

ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, *tr.*, snatch away, save; sē ēripere, escape

et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . . and

etiam, *adv.*, even; etiam nunc, even now, still

Ēvangelīna, -ae, *f.*, Evangeline

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, call out

ex (*or* ē *before consonants*), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.*, go out

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr.*, (ex+capiō), take, capture

exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *tr.*, (ex+claudō), shut out, exclude

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent

ex-eō, -īre, -iī *or* -īvī, -itus, *intr.*, go out, go forth

exerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, *tr.*, exercise, train

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, (exerceō), army

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, think, consider

exitus, -ūs, *m.*, (exeō), going out, departure

ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *tr.*, drive out

experior, -īrī, -pertus, *tr.*, try, test, experience

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *tr.*, set forth, explain

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.* take by storm, capture

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, look out for, wait, wait for

exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *tr.*, pile up, erect

extrēmus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, extreme, farthest, the end of

F

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, tale

facile, *adv.*, (facilis), easily

facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *tr.*, make, do; verba facere, speak; certiōrem facere, inform

factum, -ī, *n.*, (faciō), fact, deed, act

fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, reputation

familia, -ae, *f.*, family, household

familiāris, -e, *adj.*, (familia), familiar, intimate

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman, wife

fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; **aegrē ferre,** be distressed
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, confidence, loyalty, protection
fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter
fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, limit; *plu.*, boundaries, territory
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**fīnis**), near, neighboring
fīō, fierī, factus, *passive of* **faciō,** be made, be done, become, happen
Florida, -ae, *f.*, Florida
flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river
fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave
fortiter, *adv.*, (**fortis**), bravely
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, fate, lot
Forum, -ī, *n.*, Forum, market place
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**frūmentum**), pertaining to grain; **rēs frūmentāria,** grain supply, supply of grain
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *plu.*, crops
fruor, fruī, frūctus, *intr.*, enjoy
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight

G

gaudium, -ī, *n.*, joy, gladness
genus, -eris, *n.*, kind, race, class
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *tr.*, do, wear, wage, carry on
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek; *as noun,* **Graecus, -ī,** *m.*, a Greek
grātia, -ae, *f.*, influence, favor; *plu.*, thanks
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, welcome
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe, serious
graviter, *adv.*, (**gravis**), heavily, severely

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *tr.*, have, hold; **ōrātiōnem habēre,** deliver a speech
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, live in, dwell in, inhabit
hic, haec, hoc, *demonstrative pronoun and adj.*, this; **ille . . . hic,** the former . . . the latter
hīc, *adv.*, here, hereupon
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter
hodiē, *adv.*, (**hic** + **diēs**), today
homō, -inis, *m.*, man, human being; *plu.*, people
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour
Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horatius
hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, urge
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden
hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy

I

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *tr.*, throw, hurl
iam, *adv.*, already, by this time; **nōn iam,** no longer
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door
īdem, eadem, idem, *demonstrative pronoun and adj.*, the same

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant

ille, illa, illud, *demonstrative pronoun and adj.*, that; he, she, it; **ille . . . hic,** the former . . . the latter

imāgō, -inis, *f.*, likeness, statue, picture, mask

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, (**in**+**mittō**), let in, admit

immortālis, -e, *adj.*, (**in**+**mortālis**), immortal

impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*, (**impediō**), hindrance; *plu.*, baggage

impediō, īre, -iī *or* **-īvī, -ītus,** *tr.* hinder, block

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *tr.*, (**in**+**pellō**), drive on, excite

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, (**imperō**), general, commander, emperor

imperium, -ī, *n.*, (**imperō**), command, power, government

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, command

īmus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, lowest, the bottom of

in, *prep. with acc.*, into, toward; *with abl.*, in, on

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *tr.*, set fire to

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr. and intr.*, (**in**+**capiō**), begin, undertake

incola, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe

in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead on, bring in

in-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **īvī, -itus,** *tr.*, enter on, begin

īnferior, -ius, *comparative adj.*, lower

ingredior, -ī, -gressus, *tr. and intr.*, enter, begin

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (**in**+**iaciō**), throw into, inspire

inimīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**in**+**amīcus**), unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, **inimīcus, -ī,** *m.*, (*personal*) enemy

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**in**+**aequus**), uneven, unjust, unfavorable

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injustice, wrong, injury

inopia, -ae, *f.*, need, lack, scarcity

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *tr.*, draw up, arrange

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, whole, unimpaired, upright

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr.*, (**inter**+**capiō**), intercept, cut off

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *tr.*, (**inter**+**claudō**), cut off, stop

inter-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **īvī, -itus,** *intr.*, perish, vanish

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr.*, (**inter**+**faciō**), kill

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile
inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr. and intr.*, interrupt, discontinue
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, enter
in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *tr.*, come upon, find
invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *intr.*, envy
ipse, -a, -um, *intensive pronoun*, self, himself, herself, itself; *plu.*, themselves
īrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, angry
is, ea, id, *demonstrative pronoun and adj.*, this, that; he, she, it
iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative adj. of 2nd person*, that of yours
ita, *adv.*, so, thus; *used as affirmative answer*, yes; **ita vērō**, yes, indeed
Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy
ita-que, *conj.*, and so, therefore
iter, itineris, *n.*, road, march, journey; **iter facere**, to march
iterum, *adv.*, again
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *tr.*, order, command
iūdex, -icis, *m.*, judge, juror
iūdicium, -ī, *n.*, trial, judgment, court
iūs, iūris, *n.*, justice, (*legal*) right

L

labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, suffering
labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *intr.*, work, suffer
lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake
laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, happy
Latīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Latin
latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, thief, brigand
lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise
lectīca, -ae, *f.*, sedan chair
lectus, -ī, *m.*, couch, bed
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *tr.*, gather, read
levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*)
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law
liber, -brī, *m.*, book
līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, (**līber**), free, set free
lībertās, -ātis, *f.*, (**līber**), freedom
licet, -licēre, licuit *and* **licitum est**, *impersonal intr.*, it is allowed, it is lawful
lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, place, put, set
locus, -ī, *m.*, (*plu.*, **loca**, *n.*), place
longē, *adv.*, (**longus**), far, by far
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long
loquor, -ī, locūtus, *tr. and intr.*, speak, talk
Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius, *a Roman praenomen*
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, *tr. and intr.*, play
lūdus, -ī, *m.*, (**lūdō**), game, school
lupa, -ae, *f.*, wolf
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; **prīmā lūce**, at dawn, at daybreak

M

magister, -trī, *m.*, teacher, school master

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, (**magister**), office, magistrate

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*, (**magnus**), size, extent, importance

magnopere, *adv.*, (**magnus**), greatly, very

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large; *of sounds,* loud

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *tr.*, (**magis** +**volō**), wish rather, prefer

malum, -ī, *n.*, (**malus**), evil

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil, wicked

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *intr.*, stay, remain

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, band

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, a Roman praenomen

mare, -is, *n.*, sea

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother

mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.*, marriage

medicus, -ī, *m.*, doctor

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, the middle of

memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory; **memoriā tenēre,** remember

mēns, mentis, *f.*, (**menti-**), mind

mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, (**mēnsi-**), month

mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader, merchant

meus, -a, -um, *possessive adj.*, my, mine

mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier

mīlitāris, -e, *adj.*, (**mīles**), military; **rēs mīlitāris,** military affairs, the art of war

mille, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, a thousand; *plu.*, **mīlia, mīlium,** *n.*, thousands

mīrābilis, -e, *adj.*, wonderful

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, poor, wretched

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *tr.*, send

modus, -ī, *m.*, way, manner

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *tr.*, advise, warn

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain, hill

morior, morī or **morīrī, mortuus,** *intr.*, (**mors**), die

mors, mortis, *f.*, death

mortālis, -e, *adj.*, (**mors**), mortal

mortuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**morior**), dead

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *tr.*, move

mox, *adv.*, soon

multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, (**multus**), crowd, great number

multō, *adv.*, (**multus**), much

multum, *adv.*, (**multus**), much, very

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *plu.*, many

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *tr.*, fortify

N

nam, *conj.*, for

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, tell, relate

natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, swim
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character
nātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, born, old, of age
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor
nāvigium, -ī, *n.*, (**nāvigō**), boat
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, sail
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat
-ne, *adv., enclitic, sign of a direct question, not translatable*
nē, *conj., with subj.*, that. . . not; *adv.*, **nē. . . quidem,** not. . . even
nec, *see* **neque**
necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, necessary, urgent
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, kill, slay
negōtium, -ī, *n.*, task, trouble
neque (*or* **nec** *before consonants*), *conj.*, and not, nor; **neque. . . neque,** neither. . . nor
neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, neither
niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black
nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, well-known, famous, noble
noceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, harm, injure
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *tr. and intr.*, (**nē**+**volō**), not wish, be unwilling
nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, noun
nōn, *adv.*, not; **nōn vērō,** no, indeed
nōnāgintā, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, ninety
nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some
nōn-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes
nōnus, -a, -um, *numeral adj.*, (**novem**), ninth
nōs, *plu. of* **ego**
noster, -tra, -trum, *possessive adj.*, our, ours
nōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, well-known
novem, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, nine
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new
nox, noctis, *f.*, night; **multā nocte,** late at night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night
nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**nē**+**ūllus**), not any, no, none
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number
numquam, *adv.*, never
nunc, *adv.*, now; **etiam nunc,** even now, still
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, (**nūntius**), announce, report
nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger, message

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, against, on account of, because of
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (**ob**+**iaciō**), throw against, oppose
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *tr.*, (**ob**+**sedeō**), besiege
obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (**obsideō**), siege
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *tr.*, (**ob**+**teneō**), obtain, hold, have
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, seize, attack

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean
octāvus, -a, -um, *numeral adj.*, (**octō**), eighth
octō, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, eight
octōgintā, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (**octō**), eighty
oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye
ōdī, ōdisse, *tr.*, hate
odium, -ī, *n.*, (**ōdī**), hate, hatred
officium, -ī, *n.*, duty, service, courtesy
ōlim, *adv.*, once, once upon a time, one day
omnis, -e, *adj.*, every; *plu.*, all
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impersonal intr.*, it is fitting
oppidānus, -ī, *m.*, townsman, inhabitant of a town; *plu.*, townspeople
oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town (*walled*)
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *tr.*, (**ob**+**pōnō**), put against, oppose
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, (**ob**+**pugnō**), fight against, attack
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, plea
ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, rank, order, arrangement
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, decorate, adorn
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *tr.*, show, display

P

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, (**pāx**), conquer, subdue, pacify
paene, *adv.*, almost
Pānsa, -ae, *m.*, Pansa, a Roman cognomen
pār, paris, *adj.*, equal
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, obey
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, get ready, prepare, prepare for
pars, partis, *f.*, part, side
parum, *adv.*, (**parvus**), little, a little.
parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little
passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; **mīlle passūs**, thousand paces, mile; *plu.*, **mīlia passuum**, miles
pater, -tris, *m.*, father
patior, patī, passus, *tr.*, allow, permit, suffer
patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native land
patrōnus, -ī, *m.*, patron
paucī, -ae, -a, *plu. adj.*, few
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, truce
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money
pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, (**pēs**), on foot, infantry
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *tr.*, drive, defeat
per, *prep. with acc.*, through
per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead through, bring through
per-eō, -īre, iī *or* **īvī, -itus,** *intr.*, perish
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr.*, (**per**+**faciō**), accomplish, complete
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilled, skilful, experienced
per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus, *intr.*, remain
per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, permit, grant, entrust
per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *tr.*, arouse, disturb
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *intr.*, persuade
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *tr.*, alarm
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *intr.*, (per+teneō), reach, extend
per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *intr.*, come through, arrive
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot
petō, -ere, īvī, -ītus, *tr.*, seek, ask, look for
plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausus, *intr.*, applaud
plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full
poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty
poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet
polliceor, -ērī, -itus, *tr.*, promise
pompa, -ae, *f.*, parade
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *tr.*, put, place
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge
populus, -ī, *m.*, a people, nation
porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, carry, bring
portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port
possum, posse, potuī, —, *intr.*, (pot+sum), be able, can
post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind
posteā, *adv.*, afterward, after this
posterior, -ius, *comparative adj.*, back
postquam, *conj., with perf. ind.*, after
potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power
potior, -īrī, -ītus, *intr.*, get possession of, secure
praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr.*, (prae+capiō), instruct, order, advise
prae-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *tr.*, foretell
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr.*, (prae+faciō), put in charge of
prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, send ahead
praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward
praesēns, -entis, *adj.*, (*pres. participle of* **praesum**), present
praesidium, -ī, *n.*, guard, defense, protection
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be in charge of
praetextus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bordered
praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor, judge
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *tr.*, press
pretium, -ī, *n.*, price
Priamus, -ī, *m.*, Priam, king of Troy
prīmum, *adv.*, (prīmus), first
prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first
prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*, leader, prince
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of, for, in behalf of

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.*, go forward, advance

Prodicus, -ī, *m.*, Prodicus

prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead forth, bring forth

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus, *intr.*, go forward, advance

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *tr.*, (**prō**+**habeō**), keep away, prevent

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (**prō**+**iaciō**), throw forward, project

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, hasten, hurry

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**prope**), near, near-by

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *tr.*, put before, propose

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of

prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *tr.*, foresee

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province

proximus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, nearest, very near, next

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the state, public, official

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl

puer, puerī, *m.*, boy, child, slave; *plu.*, children

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intr.*, fight

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful, pretty

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, think, reckon

Q

quadrāgintā, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, forty

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, (**quattuor**+**centum**), four hundred

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *tr.*, ask, inquire

quam, *adv.*, how; *after comparatives*, than

quantus, -a, -um, *interrogative adj.*, how great? how much?

quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**quattuor**), fourth

quattuor, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, four

quattuordecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (**quattuor**+**decem**), fourteen

-que, *conj.*, and

quī, quae, quod, *relative pronoun*, who, which, that, *often to be translated by a personal pronoun or demonstrative*; *interrogative adj.*, which? what?

quidem, *adv.*, *postpositive*, at least, indeed; **nē. . . quidem,** not even

quīndecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (**quīnque**+**decem**), fifteen

quīnquāgintā, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, fifty

quīnque, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, five

quīntus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**quīnque**), fifth

quis, quid, *interrogative pronoun*, who? what?

quō, *interrogative adv.*, where? whither? to what place?
quod, *conj.*, because
quoque, *conj., placed after the emphatic word*, also, too

R

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, plan, way, manner
recēns, -entis, *adj.*, fresh, recent
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr.*, (re+capiō), take back, receive; **sē recipere**, betake oneself, retreat, return
recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, read aloud, recite
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, refuse
red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *tr.*, give back, return, render
red-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **īvī, -itus**, *intr.*, go back, return
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *tr.*, (red+agō), drive back, reduce, render
re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, lead back, bring back
re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus, *tr.*, bring back, report
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *tr.*, (re+faciō), repair, refit
rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen
rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, (**rēx**), kingdom, throne
reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (re+iaciō), throw back, drive back
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, *tr.*, leave, leave behind, abandon
reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**relinquō**), the rest of, (*all*) the other
re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus, *intr.*, remain
re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, send back
remōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*perf. part. of* **removeō**), remote
re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *tr.*, move back, remove
re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *tr.*, drive back
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *tr.*, find, discover
re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, carry back, win
rēs, reī, *f.*, thing, event, circumstance; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply; **rēs mīlitāris**, military affairs, art of war; **rēs pūblica**, state, commonwealth
resistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, resist
respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *tr. and intr.*, answer, reply
retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *tr.*, (re+teneō), hold back, retain
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *tr. and intr.*, laugh, laugh at
rīdiculus, -a, -um, *adj.*, funny
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman; *as noun*, **Rōmānus, -ī**, *m.*, a Roman

rūfus, -a, -um, *adj.*, red
rūs, rūris, *n.*, country

S

sacer, -cra, -crum, *adj.*, sacred
sacrum, -ī, *n.*, (**sacer**), sacrifice
saepe, *adv.*, often
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety
satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently
satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *intr.*, satisfy
saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, stone
schola, -ae, *f.*, school
scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, know
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *tr. and intr.*, write
secundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, second
sed, *conj.*, but
sēdecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (**sex**+**decem**), sixteen
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, *intr.*, sit
semper, *adv.*, always
senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate
sententia, -ae, *f.*, (**sentiō**), opinion, decision
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *tr.*, feel, realize
septem, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, seven
septendecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (**septem**+**decem**), seventeen
septimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**septem**), seventh
septuāgintā, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, seventy
sepulcrum, -ī, *n.*, tomb
sequor, -ī, secūtus, *tr. and intr.*, follow
servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*, (**servus**), slavery
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, save, keep
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave
sescentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, (**sex**+**centum**), six hundred
sex, *indeclinable adj.*, six
sexāgintā, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty
sextus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (**sex**), sixth
sī, *conj.*, if
signum, -ī, *n.*, signal, standard
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest
similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
singulāris, -e, *adj.*, unusual, remarkable, extraordinary
sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left, left-hand; *as noun*, **sinistra, -ae,** *f.*, left hand
socius, -ī, *m.*, companion, comrade, ally
sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only
somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep
sonitus, -ūs, *m.*, sound
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister
spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, time, distance
spectāculum, -ī, *n.*, (**spectō**), sight, show
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, look at, face
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, (**spēs**), hope, hope for

spēs, speī, *f.*, hope
stō, stāre, stetī, stātus, *intr.*, stand
sub, *prep. with acc. after verbs of motion,* under, to the foot of; *with abl. after verbs of rest,* under, at the foot of
sub-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **īvī, -itus,** *tr.*, undergo, suffer
sub-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *tr.*, send to the help of, yield
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.*, (sub+cēdō), come up
suī, *no nom., reflexive pronoun of 3rd person,* of himself, herself, itself, themselves
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *intr.*, be
summus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, highest, the top of
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *tr.*, take, assume
superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, proud, haughty
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, surpass, conquer
supplicium, -ī, *n.*, punishment, torture
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, *intr.*, rise
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *tr.*, (sub+capiō), undertake, take up
sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *tr.*, (sub+teneō), hold up, sustain
suus, -a, -um, *possessive adj.*, his, her, its, their (*own*), *belonging to the subject*

T

taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop
tabula, -ae, *f.*, board, tablet, notice, picture, map
taeda, -ae, *f.*, torch
tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind
tam, *adv. of degree,* so
tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last
tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, so much, such
tardus, -a, -um, slow, late
tēctum, -ī, *n.*, roof, house
templum, -ī, *n.*, temple
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, test, try, attempt
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *tr.*, hold, keep; **memoriā tenēre,** hold in memory, remember
terra, -ae, *f.*, land, country
tertius, -a, -um, *adj.*, third
theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theatre, playhouse
Thēbae, -ārum, *f. plu.*, Thebes, *a town in Greece*
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear
timidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (timeō), fearful
timor, -ōris, *m.*, (timeō), fear
tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, all
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *tr.*, (trāns+dō), give up, hand over
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *tr.*, (trāns+dūcō), lead across, lead over
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *tr.*, draw, drag

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *tr.*, (trāns+iaciō), throw across
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across
trāns-eō, -īre, -iī *or* **īvī, -itus,** *tr. and intr.*, go across, cross
trecentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, (trēs+centum), three hundred
tredecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (trēs+decem), thirteen
trēs, tria, *numeral adj.*, three
trīgintā, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, thirty
triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumphal procession
Trōiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Trojan, of Troy
tū, tuī, *pers. pronoun*, you
tueor, -ērī, tūtus *or* **tuitus,** *tr.*, look at, protect, maintain
tum, *adv.*, then
turris, -is, *f.*, tower
tuus, -a, -um, *possessive adj.*, your, yours (*belonging to one person*)

U

ubi, *adv.*, *interrogative*, where? *relative*, where; *conj.*, when
ubīque, *adv.*, everywhere
ūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, any
ultimus, -a, -um, *superlative adj.*, last
ūndecim, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (ūnus+decem), eleven
ūndēvīgintī, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, (ūnus + dē + vīgintī), nineteen
ūnus, -a, -um, *numeral adj.*, one, only
urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (urbs), city
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city
ut, *conj.*, *with ind.*, as; *with subj.*, that, in order that, so that
uter, -tra, -trum, *interrogative adj.*, which (*of two*)?
uter-que, traque, -trumque, *adj.*, each (*of two*), both
ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *intr.*, use, employ

V

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *tr.*, sell
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *intr.*, come
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind
verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; **verba facere,** talk
vereor, -ērī, -itus, *tr.*, fear, respect
vērō, *adv.*, *postpositive*, truly, indeed
vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true
vester, -tra, -trum, *possessive adj.*, your, yours (*belonging to more than one*)
vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothing
vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, former, of former times
via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, highway
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *tr.*, see
vīgintī, *indeclinable numeral adj.*, twenty
vīlla, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse, country house
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *tr. and intr.*, conquer, overcome
vinculum, -ī, *n.*, chain, bond

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine
vir, virī, *m.*, man (*as contrasted with woman*), hero
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*, (**vir**), manliness, bravery, courage; *plu.*, acts of courage
vīs, vīs, *f.*, force, violence; *plu.*, strength
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life
vīvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alive, living, live
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, call, summon
volō, velle, voluī, —, *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing
volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus, *tr.*, roll
vōs, *plu. of* **tū**
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, word
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tr.*, (**vulnus**), wound
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound

ENGLISH-LATIN

(Roman numeral refers to the Special Vocabulary in which the word appears.)

A

abandon, relinquō, VII
able: be able, possum, IV
about, dē, *with abl.*, II
absent: be absent, absum, II
accomplish, efficiō, X; perficiō, X
account: on account of, *abl. of cause;* propter, *with acc.*, XI; ob, *with acc.*, XIV
across, trāns, *with acc.*, I
act, factum, VIII
active, ācer, X
actor, āctor, XV
admit, immittō, XV
advance, prōgredior, XV
advice, cōnsilium, IV
after, *prep.*, post, *with acc.*, III; **after this,** posteā, III
afterward, posteā, III
again, iterum, III
age, aetās, IX
aid, auxilium, IV
alive, vīvus, XII
all, tōtus, IV; *plu. of* omnis, IX
ally, socius, IV
almost, paene, I
alone, sōlus, IV
always, semper, III
among, inter, *with acc.*, I; apud, *with acc.*, X
ancient, antīquus, II
and, et, I; -que, III; **and . . . not,** neque (nec), IV; **and so,** itaque, IV
animal, animal, XIII
announce, nūntiō, III
another, alius, IV
answer, respondeō, V
approach, *verb*, appropinquō, VI; *noun*, adventus, XI
arms, arma, V
army, exercitus, XI
around, circum, *with acc.*, I
arouse, concitō, IV; permoveō, VI
arrangement, ōrdō, XII
arrival, adventus, XI
arrive, perveniō, XII
asleep: be asleep, dormiō, XI
at, ad, *with acc.*, I; **at last, at length,** tandem, IV
attack, occupō, II; oppugnō, IV
attempt, cōnor, XV
away: be away, absum, II
away from, ā, ab, *with abl.*, II

B

back, *prefix* re- *or* red-
bad, malus, III
baggage, impedīmenta (*plu.*), VII
band, cohors, IX; manus, XI

barbarian, barbarus, VI
battle, proelium IV; **line of battle,** aciēs, XII
be, sum, II; **be able,** possum, IV; **be absent, be away,** absum, II; **be present,** adsum, II
beautiful, pulcher, III
because, *conj.*, quod; **because of,** *abl. of cause*
become, fīō, XV
before, *adv.*, anteā, VIII; *prep. with acc.*, ante, VII; **before this,** anteā, VIII
begin, incipiō, IX; **began,** coepī, XV
best, *superlative of* **good** *or* **well**
better, *comparative of* **good** *or* **well**
between, inter, *with acc.*, I
black, niger, III
block, impediō, XIII
boat, nāvigium, III
body, corpus, V
book, liber, III
both . . . and, et . . . et, I
bottom of, īmus, XI
boy, puer, III
brave, fortis, IX
bravely, fortiter, X
bravery, virtūs, V
bridge, pōns, IX
bring, portō, II; (*of persons*), dūcō, VII; ferō, XV; **bring back,** reportō, III; redūcō, VII; referō, XV; **bring out,** ēdūcō, VII; **bring together,** condūcō, VII
brother, frāter, IV
build, faciō, IX
but, sed, I
buy, coëmō, X
by, ā, ab, *with abl.*, VI

C

call, vocō, I; (*by name*), appellō, III; **call together,** convocō, III
camp, castra (*plu.*), V
can, possum, IV
captive, captīvus, XII
capture, capiō, IX; (*by storm*), expugnō, VI
care, dīligentia, II
carry, portō, I; ferō, XV; **carry off,** dēportō, III; abdūcō, VII
cavalry, equitātus, XI
cave, caverna, IV
cease, dēsistō, XIII
charge: put in charge of, praeficiō, XIII
chariot, currus, XIV
child, puer, III
citizen, cīvis, IX
city, cīvitās, V; urbs, IX
climb, ascendō, VII
cohort, cohors, IX
come, veniō, VII; **come together,** conveniō, VII
command, *verb*, iubeō, VI; imperō, *with dat.*, XIII; *noun*, imperium, XIV
companion, socius, IV
compel, cōgō, VII
comrade, socius, IV
conquer, pācō, VI; superō, VIII; vincō, XI

consider, exīstimō, VI; **be considered,** *pass. of* habeō, V
consul, cōnsul, VIII
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
cottage, casa, II
country, rūs, XIII; (*native*), patria, I; **country house,** vīlla, I
court, iūdicium, V
cruel, crūdēlis, IX
Cuba, Cuba, -ae, *f.*

D

danger, perīculum, VI
dare, audeō, XIV
daughter, fīlia, I
dawn: **at dawn,** prīmā lūce, XII
day, diēs, XII
death, mors, XII
deed, factum, VIII
defend, dēfendō, VII
deliver (*a speech*), habeō, XIV
departure, exitus, XI
desire, *verb*, cupiō, X
desirous, cupidus, XII
different, dissimilis, X
difficult, difficilis, IX
difficulty, difficultās, XI
discover, reperiō, XV
distinguished, amplus, III; clārus, III
disturb, permoveō, VI
divide, dīvidō, XV
do, faciō, IX; *as auxiliary verb not expressed*
door, porta, II
down, *prefix* dē-
down from, dē, *with abl.*, II
draw, dūcō, VII
drive (*a horse*), dūcō, VII; **drive out,** ēiciō, X; expellō, XII
duty, officium, VIII
dwell, habitō, I

E

eagerly, ācriter, X
easily, facile, XI
easy, facilis, IX
emperor, imperātor, IX
end, fīnis, X; **end of,** extrēmus, XII
enemy, hostis, IX
enjoy, fruor, XV
enough, satis, VIII
enter, intrō, II; ingredior, XV
everybody, *masc. plu. of* omnis, IX; **everything,** *neut. plu. of* omnis, IX
evil, *adj.*, malus, III; *as noun*, malum, malī, *n.*
excel, antecēdō, X
excite, concitō, IV; commoveō, VIII
experience, experior, XV
explain, expōnō, XIV
extend, pertineō, VII
extraordinary, ēgregius, VI
eye, oculus, XV

F

face, spectō, II
famous, nōbilis, IX
far, longē, II
farmer, agricola, I
farmhouse, vīlla, I
father, pater, V
fatherland, patria, I

favor, beneficium, XII
fear, *verb*, timeō, V; vereor, XV; *noun*, timor, XI
fearful, timidus, VI
feelings, animus, IV
few, paucī, VIII
field, ager, III
fight, pugnō, IV; contendō, VIII
find, inveniō, VII
finish, cōnficiō, XIV
fixed, certus, III
Florida, Florida, -ae, *f.*
follow, sequor, XV
food, cibus, XII
foot, pēs, XI; **on foot**, pedester, X
for, *conj.*, nam, IV; enim (*postpositive*), XI; **for the purpose of, for the sake of**, causā, *with gen. preceding*, XV
forces, cōpiae (*plu.*), V
foreign, barbarus, VI
forest, silva, I
former: **the former . . . the latter**, ille . . . hic, VIII
formerly, anteā, VIII
fortify, mūniō, VII
Forum, Forum, XIV
free, *adj.*, līber, III; *verb*, līberō, I
freedom, lībertās, VI
frequent, crēber, IV
friend, amīcus, III
friendly, amīcus, IV
friendship, amīcitia, IV
from, out from, ē, ex, *with abl.*, II; **away from**, ā, ab, *with abl.*, II; **down from**, dē, *with abl.*, II
full, plēnus, VI

G

game, lūdus, X
garden, hortus, III
general, dux, V; imperātor, IX
gift, dōnum, III
girl, puella, II
give, dō, II
go, cēdō, VII; eō, XV; **go out**, excēdō, VII; exeō, XV; **go to**, adeō, XV; **going to**, *future participle*
god, deus, III
good, bonus, III
government, imperium, XIV
grandmother, avia, II
grain, frūmentum, IV; **grain supply**, rēs frūmentāria, XII
great, magnus, II
greatly, magnopere, X
Greece, Graecia, II
Greek, Graecus, V
guard, praesidium, VI

H

hand, manus, XI
happy, laetus, III
harbor, portus, XII
hasten, properō, I; contendō, VIII
hate, ōdī, XIV
have, habeō, V
he, is, VI
head, caput, V
hear, audiō, VII
heart, animus, IV
heavy, gravis, IX
help, auxilium, IV
her, hers, eius, VI; *reflexive*, suus, XI

hesitate, dubitō, X
hide, abdō, VII
hill, mōns, IX
himself, *reflexive*, suī, XI; *intensive*, ipse, XI
his, eius, VI; *reflexive*, suus, XI
hold, teneō, V
home, domus, XIII
hope, *noun*, spēs, XII; hope, hope for, *verb*, spērō, IX
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, *m.*
horse, equus, III
horseback: on horseback, equester, XIV
horseman, eques, V
hour, hōra, II
house, domus, XIII
how, quam, VIII; (*in what manner*), quō modō, XII
however, autem (*postpositive*), IV
hurry, properō, I

I

I, ego, XI
if, sī, IV
immortal, immortālis, IX
in, in, II
indeed, quidem (*postpositive*), X; *with* yes *or* no, vērō, I
influence, auctōritās, VII
inhabitant, incola, II
injure, noceō, *with dat.*, XIII
injury, iniūria, III
intercept, intercipiō, IX
into, in, *with acc.*, III
island, īnsula, I
it, *neuter of* is, VI
itself, *intensive*, ipse, XI

J

journey, iter, V
judge, iūdex, VI
judgment, iūdicium, V
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*
juror, iūdex, VI

K

keen, ācer, X
keep away, prohibeō, V
kill, interficiō, X
kind, benignus, XIII
kindness, beneficium, XII
king, rēx, V
knight, eques, V
know, sciō, XI; not know, ignōrō, XII
knowledge, scientia, X

L

land, terra, I; native land, patria, I
language, lingua, IV
large, magnus, III
last: at last, tandem, IV; dēnique, XIV
late, tardus, III
latter: the former . . . the latter, ille . . . hic, VIII
laugh, laugh at, rīdeō, X
law, lēx, V
lawful: it is lawful, licet, XIII
lead, dūcō, VII; lead back, redūcō, VII; lead out, ēdūcō, VII
leader, dux, IV; prīnceps, V
learn, cognōscō, VIII
leave, leave behind, relinquō, VII; (*go away*), discēdō, X

left (*remaining*), reliquus, IV
life, vīta, VII
light, lūx, V
like, similis, X
line of battle, aciēs, XII
little, parvus, II
live, live in, habitō, I
long, longus, III; for a long time, diū, IV; no longer, nōn iam, V
look at, spectō, II; tueor, XV
loud, magnus, III
love, amō, I
loyalty, fidēs, XII

M

magistrate, magistrātus, XIV
make, faciō, IX; be made, fīō, XV
man, vir, III; homō, V
manner, ratiō, XI; modus, XII
many, multī (*plu.*), III
march, *noun*, iter, V; *verb*, iter faciō, XIV
mask, imāgō, XV
master, dominus, III
matter, rēs, XII
meanwhile, interim, XI
meeting, conventus, XV
memory, memoria, VI
message, nūntius, XV
mile, mīlle passūs, XI; *plu.*, mīlia passuum
mind, mēns, X
money, pecūnia, II
month, mēnsis, XV
more, *adj.*, *comparative of* multī; *adv.*, *sign of comparative degree*
mortal, mortālis, IX
most, *adj.*, *superlative of* multī; *adv.*, *sign of superlative degree*
mother, māter, VI
mountain, mōns, IX
much, *adj.*, multus, III; *adv.*, (*by much*), multō
my, mine, meus, III

N

name, *noun*, nōmen, V; *verb*, appellō, III
narrow, angustus, XIII
nation, populus, V
native land, patria, I
near, prope, *with acc.*, I
neighboring, fīnitimus, IV
neither, *adj.*, neuter, IV; neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque, IV
new, novus, V
night, nox, XI
no, *adj.*, nūllus, IV; no longer, nōn iam, V; no, indeed, nōn vērō, I
nor, neque, nec, IV; neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque, IV
not, nōn, I
now, nunc, III

O

obey, pareō, *with dat.*, XIII
often, saepe, I
old, vetus, XV
on, in, *with abl.*, II
once, once upon a time, ōlim, II
one, ūnus, II; the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter, IV
only, sōlus, IV

or, aut, III; **either . . . or,** aut . . . aut
order: in order to, ut, *with subj.*, XII; **in order not to,** nē, *with subj.*, XII
other, another, alius, IV; **the other** (*of two*), alter, IV; (*all*) **the other,** reliquus, IV; **some . . . others,** aliī . . . aliī
ought, dēbeō, V
our, noster, III
ourselves, *reflexive plural of* meī, XI
out of, ē, ex, *with abl.*, II
own: his, her, their own, suus, XI

P

painstaking, dīligentia, II
part, pars, X
people (*nation*), populus, V; (*persons*), *plu. of* homō, V
perform, agō, VII
persuade, persuādeō, *with dat.*, XIII
place, *verb,* locō, VI; pōnō, VII; *noun,* locus, III
plan, ratiō, XI
pleasing, grātus, III
poet, poēta, III
poor, miser, II
position, dignitās, VII
possession: get possession of, potior, *with abl.*, XV
prefer, mālō, XV
prepare, prepare for, parō, II
present, *noun,* dōnum, III; **to be present,** adsum, II
pretty, pulcher, III
price, pretium, X
prince, prīnceps, V
Prodicus, Prodicus, -ī, *m.*
promise, *verb,* polliceor, XV; *noun,* spēs, XII
protect, dēfendō, VII; tueor, XV
protection, praesidium, VI
proud, superbus, IX
provide, comparō, VIII
public, pūblicus, VI
punishment, supplicium, V
pupil, discipulus, III
purpose: for the purpose of, causā, *with gen. preceding,* XV
put: put in charge of, praeficiō, *with dat.*, XIII

Q

queen, rēgīna, II
quick, celer, X
quickly, celeriter, X

R

race (*tribe*), genus, V; (*running*), cursus, XV
read, legō, IX; **read aloud,** recitō, X
realize, sentiō, XI
receive, accipiō, IX
recite, recitō, X
regarding, dē, *with abl.*, II
remain, maneō, XII; remaneō, X; permaneō, XIV
remember, memoriā teneō, VI
render, redigō, VIII
reply, respondeō, V

rescue, ēripiō, XII
resist, resistō, *with dat.*, XI
rest, the rest of, reliquus, IV
return (*go back*), sē recipere, XI; redeō, XV
reward, praemium, IV
right (*legal*), iūs, VI; **right hand**, dextra, II
rise, surgō, XI
river, flūmen, V
road, via, IV; iter, V
robber, latrō, VII
rock, saxum, VII
Roman, Rōmānus, IV
Rome, Rōma, IV

S

sacred, sacer, VI
safety, salūs, V
sail, nāvigō, I
sailor, nauta, I
same, īdem, VIII
save, servō, IV; ēripiō, XII
say, dīcō, VIII
school, schola, III; lūdus, X
schoolmaster, magister, III
sea, mare, IX
secure, potior, XV
see, videō, V
seek, seek for, petō, VIII
seize, occupō, I
sell, vēndō, IX
senate, senātus, XI
senator, senātor, XIV
send, mittō, VII; **send back**, remittō, VII
set: set free, lībero, I; **set fire to**, incendō, XIII
she, *fem. of* is, VI
ship, nāvis, IX
shout, clāmō, XIV
show, *noun*, spectāculum, XIV
shut out, exclūdō, XII
sick, aeger, III
siege, obsidiō, V
signal, signum, V
sister, soror, VIII
sit, sedeō, XIII
size, magnitūdō, XIV
skilful, skilled, perītus, XII
slave, servus, III
slavery, servitūs, VI
slay, necō, IV
sleep, dormiō, XI
small, parvus, II
so, ita, I; tam, XV; **and so**, itaque, IV
soldier, mīles, V
some, nōnnūllus, XV; **some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī
son, fīlius, IV
soon, mox, II
speech, ōrātiō, V
spend (*time*), agō, VII
state, cīvitās, V; rēs pūblica, XIV
still, etiam nunc, III
story, fābula, II
strength, *plu. of* vīs, XIII
strong, fortis, IX
subdue, pācō, VI
suitable, idōneus, X
summer, aestās, VI
surround, circumveniō, X
swift, celer, X
swiftly, celeriter, X

T

table, mēnsa, XIV
take (*capture*), capiō, IX; (*conduct*), dūcō, VII; take away, abdūcō, VII
talk, verba facīo, XIII
tall, altus, V
task, negōtium, VI
teach, doceō, XIII
teacher, magister, III
tell, nārrō, II
temple, templum, XIV
than, quam, VIII
that, *demonstrative*, is, VI; ille, VIII, *relative*, quī, V; *conj.*, ut, XII; that . . . not (*purpose*), nē, XII; (*result*), ut . . . nōn; that of yours, iste, VIII
theatre, theātrum, XV
Thebes, Thēbae, -ārum, *f. plu.*
their, *gen. plu. of* is, VI; *reflexive* (their own), suus, XI
themselves, *reflexive*, suī, XI; *intensive*, ipse, XI
then, tum, II
therefore, itaque, IV
thick, crēber, IV
thing, rēs, XII; . . . things, *neuter plural of adjective*
think, exīstimō, VI; putō, VI; arbitror, XV
this, is, VI; hic, VIII
through, per, *with acc.* III
throw down, dēiciō, IX
time, tempus, V
to (*motion in verb*), ad, *with acc.*, I; (*no motion*) *dative case*
today, hodiē, IX
together, *prefix* con- *or* com-
toward, ad, *with acc.*, I
town, oppidum, III
townspeople, *plu. of* oppidānus, IX
tree, arbor, VII
trial, iūdicium V
troops, *plu. of* cōpia, V
trust, cōnfīdō, IX
try, cōnor, XV
two hundred, ducentī, XIII

U

unfavorable, inīquus, IV
unfriendly, inimīcus, III
unjust, inīquus, IV
unlike, dissimilis, X
unusual, ēgregius, VI; singulāris, XIV
urge, hortor, XV
use, ūtor, XV
used to, *expressed by imperfect tense*

V

very, *sign of superlative degree*; magnopere, X
victory, victōria, III
violence, vīs, XIII
voice, vōx, VII

W

wagon, carrus, IX
wait, wait for, exspectō, II
walk, ambulō, IV
war, bellum, III
warn, moneō, V
water, aqua, I

way, ratiō, XI; modus, XII
we, *plu. of* ego, XI
wear, gerō, XI
welcome, grātus, III
well, bene, X; **well-known,** nōtūs, V; nōbilis, X
what, *pronoun,* quid, I; *adj.,* quī, V
when, cum, III; ubi, XIII
where, ubi, I; quō, I
which, *rel. pronoun and interrog. adj.,* quī, V; **which** (*of two*), uter, IV
while, cum, III
who, *interrogative,* quis, I; *relative,* quī, V
whole, tōtus, IV
why, cūr, I
wicked, malus, III
wide, lātus, III
wife, fēmina, II
win, reportō, III
wind, ventus, V
wing, cornū, XI
winter, hiems, VI
wish, cupiō, X; volō, XV; **not wish,** nōlō, XV
with, cum, *with abl.,* II
without, sine, *with abl.,* VII
wolf, lupa, II
woman, fēmina, II
word, verbum, XIII
work, *verb,* labōrō, III; *noun,* labor, XI
worst, *superlative of* **bad**
wound, *noun,* vulnus, V; *verb,* vulnerō, VIII
wretched, miser, II
write, scrībō, VIII

Y

year, annus, III
yes, ita, I; **yes, indeed,** ita vērō, I
you, *sing. or plu. of* tū, XI
young man, adulēscēns, XV
your (*belonging to one*), tuus, III; (*belonging to more than one*), vester, III; **that of yours,** iste, VIII
yourself, yourselves, *reflexive, sing. or plu. of* tuī, XI

INDEX

(*The references are to sections*)

Ablative case, absolute, 278
of cause, 283
of degree of difference, 289
with deponents, 311
of description, 235
of manner, 284
of means, 282
of place from which, 262, 263
of place in which, 262
of separation, 264
of specification, 290
of time when or within which, 269
Accusative case, of extent, 268
of place to which, 262, 263
Adjectives, third declension, 204, 208
possessive, 224
Adverbs, formation and comparison, 211

Causal clauses with *quod*, 323
Commands, 350, 351
Comparison of adjectives, regular, 209; irregular, 214
of adverbs, regular 211; irregular, 215
Conjugation of verbs
I, *vocāre*, 239, 243, 249, 250
II, *monēre*, 239, 243, 249, 250
III, *dūcere*, 239, 243, 249, 250
III, *capere*, 198, 239, 243, 249, 250
IV, *audīre*, 239, 243, 249, 250
defective verbs, 279
deponents, 310
irregular verbs: see *eō*, *esse*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*, *posse*, *volō*
periphrastic, active, 315, passive, 333
semideponents, 306

Dative case with adjectives, 216
of agency, 334
with compound verbs, 257
with intransitive verbs, 255
Declension
III declension, 203
IV declension, 229
V declension, 234
of adjectives, 204, 208
progressive, 292
Defective verbs, 279
Deponent verbs, defined, 305; conjugation, 310
Domus, declension, 258

Ego, declension, 221
Eō, conjugation, 327
Esse, 239, 243, 249, 314

Ferō, conjugation, 345
Fīō, conjugation, 324
Formation of words, 270, 285

Gender in fourth declension, 229
in fifth declension, 234
Genitive case with adjectives, 245
of description, 235
of the whole 329
Gerund, formation, 338; uses 340; compared with gerundive, 339
Gerundive, 332

Imperatives, 350
Indirect discourse, 300, 301
Infinitives, formation, 295
as subject and complement, 296

Infinitives, in indirect discourse, 301
Ipse, declension and use, 231
I-stems, 203

Locative case, 259, 263

Mālō, conjugation, 319

Nōlō, conjugation, 319
Numerals, cardinals, 291, 349
ordinals, 291

Participles, formation, 273; declension, 274; uses, 275
Periphrastic conjugations, active, 315, 316; passive, 333
Place relations, 262
Posse, conjugation, 314
Possessive adjectives, 224
Pronouns, intensive, 231
personal, 221, 222
reflexive, 221, 223
Purpose, 240, 244, 342

Questions, indirect 251

Semideponent verbs, 306
Sequence of tenses, 252
Subjunctive, conjugation, present, 239
imperfect, 243
perfect and pluperfect active, 249
passive, 250
indirect question, 251
purpose, 240, 244
result, 346
substantive clauses, 256
Suī, declension, 221
Supines, 341
Suus, translation of, 225
Sum, see *esse*
Synopses, progressive, 297

Tū, declension, 221

Vīs, declension, 258
Volō, conjugation, 319

C0-CFB-522